A survey of the use of the term *vedanā* ("sensations")
in the Pali Nikāyas

Sean SALKIN, B.A.

A thesis submitted in fulfilment
of the requirements for the degree of
Master of Philosophy

UNIVERSITY OF SYDNEY

DEPARTMENT OF INDIAN SUBCONTINENTAL STUDIES

August 2005
For my parents, Ivor and Patricia Salkin.

... When the mind's free
The body's delicate.

*King Lear* III. iv.11-12
Acknowledgements

Many people have made this thesis possible. I owe a great debt to all my teachers and to all those who helped me in diverse other ways.

I am grateful to my first Pali teacher, Dr. R. Panth. I wish to acknowledge the support and assistance I received from Professor S.N. Mukherjee of the University of Sydney, who encouraged me in my early days at the University of Sydney. Dr. Peter Masefield was of great assistance in reading and commenting on a number of the chapters. Dr. Stephen Morey provided encouragement and assistance with formatting. Patrick Given-Wilson and Virginia McLeod supported and encouraged me from beginning to end. The librarians of the Fisher Library, University of Sydney, especially those in the Inter-library Loans Section, were unfailingly helpful.

A thesis cannot proceed without a good supervisor. I have been as lucky as one can be in having as my supervisor Dr. Peter Oldmeadow. He is not only a fine scholar, but is solicitous for my welfare in every way. Whenever I needed him, he was available. Whenever he judged it necessary he challenged the conceptual basis of my thinking and I was thereby able to gain a deeper understanding of the topic.

I owe a special debt to my parents Ivor and Patricia Salkin who encouraged and supported me throughout.

All of the people mentioned above have helped to make this thesis what it is; for any shortcomings I alone am responsible.
### Table of Contents

Acknowledgements ................................................................. v

Table of Contents ................................................................. vii

Abbreviations used in this thesis ........................................................ xi

Introduction ................................................................................. 1

Chapter one: *Vedanā* and the soteriological practices described in the four principal Nikāyas ................................................................. 7

Chapter two: *Vedanā* and the *paticca-samuppāda* ................................................. 38

Chapter three: Physical and mental aspects of *vedanā* ................................................. 73

Chapter four: A survey of the use of the term *vedanā* in descriptions of the workings of kamma in the Nikāyas ................................................................. 132

Chapter five: Conclusion .................................................................. 151

Bibliography ................................................................................. 157
Statement of Originality

This thesis contains no material which has been accepted for the award of any other degree or diploma in any University, or which has been previously submitted for any degree or diploma. It contains no material previously published or written by another person, except where due reference is made in the text of the thesis.

Sean Salkin
Abbreviations used in this thesis

The abbreviations of the titles of Pali texts are those adopted by the *Critical Pali Dictionary*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPD</td>
<td><em>Critical Pali Dictionary</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MW</td>
<td>M. Monier Williams, <em>Sanskrit-English Dictionary</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PED</td>
<td><em>Pali Text's Society's Pali-English Dictionary</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction

This thesis takes as its starting point certain statements made by the meditation teacher S.N. Goenka, of which the following is typical:

[W]hatever arises in the mind, the Buddha discovered, will be accompanied by a physical sensation. Hence, whether the meditator is exploring the mental or the physical aspect of the phenomenon of “I”, awareness of sensation is essential.

This discovery is the unique contribution of the Buddha, of central importance in his teaching. Before him in India among his contemporaries, there were many who taught and practised sīla [morality] and samādhi [concentration]. Paññā [wisdom] also existed, at least devotional or intellectual wisdom: it was commonly accepted that mental defilements are the source of suffering, that craving and aversion must be eliminated in order to purify the mind and to attain liberation. The Buddha simply found the way to do it.

What had been lacking was an understanding of the importance of sensation. Then as now, it was generally thought that our reactions are to the external objects of sense—vision, sound, odour, taste, touch, thoughts. However, observation of the truth within reveals that between the object and the reaction is a missing link: sensation. The contact of an object with the corresponding sense door gives rise to sensations; the saññā assigns a positive or negative valuation, in accordance with which the sensation becomes pleasant or unpleasant, and one reacts with craving or aversion. The process occurs so rapidly that conscious awareness of it develops only after a reaction has been repeated many times and has gathered dangerous strength sufficient to overpower the mind. To deal with the reactions, one must become aware of them at the point where they start; they start with sensation, and so one must be aware of sensations. The discovery of this fact, unknown before him, enabled Siddhattha Gotama to attain enlightenment, and this is why he always stressed the importance of sensation.¹

¹ S.N. Goenka, The Discourse Summaries, Talks from a Ten-day Course in Vipassana Meditation, Igatpuri, India, Vipassana Research Institute, 1997, p.58.
In this striking statement Goenka gives paramount importance to sensations, which is his translation of the Pali term *vedanā*. This thesis is an exploration of the use of the term *vedanā* in the Pali Nikāyas. The first chapter focuses on passages in which *vedanā* features in descriptions of practices which lead to liberation from suffering. The second chapter is an extension of the first, studying the use of the term *vedanā* in passages dealing with the causal sequence which has profound soteriological significance, the *paṭicca-samuppāda* ("dependent origination").

The third chapter looks at passages in the Nikāyas which deal with mental and physical aspects of *vedanā*. Goenka places great emphasis on the role that bodily sensations play in the meditation technique that he teaches:

Vipassanā means a special kind of vision: observation of the reality within oneself. This is achieved by taking as the object of attention one’s own physical sensations. The technique is the systematic and dispassionate observation of sensations within oneself. This observation unfolds the entire reality of mind and body.²

This chapter examines texts from the Nikāyas which put *vedanā* in physical and mental contexts. It also places this issue in the broader context of descriptions of physical and mental aspects of other phenomena in the Nikāyas. Some attention is paid in this chapter to conflicting views of various Pali commentaries on these passages.

The fourth chapter surveys passages in the Nikāyas which highlight *vedanā* in their descriptions of the workings of kamma (Skt. karma).

An important preoccupation of this thesis is an examination of passages in the Nikāyas in which Pali terms related to *vedanā* play significant roles, in particular, the terms *vedayita*, *vedanīya* and the verb *paṭi-san-vid*. In the second chapter we see how the verb *paṭi-san-vid* seems to "stand in" for *vedanā* in certain presentations of the *paṭicca-

samuppāda. In the third chapter, it is noted that these terms occur in passages which describe combinations of mental and physical events. They also play an important role in descriptions of the working of kamma, as seen in the fourth chapter.

A number of modern writers on the texts of the Nikāyas have commented on the importance of the role of vedanā. Thus Nyanaponika, translating vedanā as “Feeling”:

Through actual experience it can thus be confirmed that the ever-revolving round of Dependent Origination (paṭicca-samuppāda) can be stopped at the point of Feeling, and that there is no inherent necessity that Feeling is followed by Craving. Here we encounter Feeling as a key factor on the path of liberation, and, therefore the Contemplation of Feeling has, in Buddhist tradition, always been highly regarded as an effective aid on that path.\(^3\)

To my knowledge, however, none of these writers has ever followed up comments like these with any kind of study of this term as it is used in the Nikāyas, let alone thorough, detailed and systematic study that the above statement would seem to call for.\(^4\)

The writers who have made comments like these have strong connections with the Theravāda tradition.\(^5\) Those western scholars who have written on the texts of the Pali Nikāyas from a critical point of view almost invariably make no indication that vedanā could have any special significance. Their preoccupations lie elsewhere. Commenting on the increasing number of monographs concerned with Buddhist thought in the last twenty-five years, R. Gethin notes that

by far the majority gravitate towards those aspects of the Nikāya thought-world that immediately capture the imagination of the mind nurtured in the traditions of modern western philosophy: conditioned arising (paṭicca-samuppāda), the absence of a substantial self (anattā), and nibbāna. In these scholars have seen

---


\(^4\) Nyanaponika’s book *The Contemplation of Feeling*, referred to in the above footnote, is not, as its title may imply, a thorough study of the use of the term vedanā in the Pali texts, but a translation of the Vedanāsamuttaya of the Saṅyuttanikāya, as well as some extracts from other suttas, with a brief introduction.

\(^5\) See for example those cited at the beginning of the second chapter of this thesis.
reflections of some of the classic preoccupations of western philosophy such as causality, the logical contradictions of difference and identity involved in the notion of change, the concept of the person and personal identity, and the metaphysics of the absolute. I do not wish to suggest that one is mistaken in seeing such reflections, but only that reflections can be misleading. The point is that in Buddhist thought discussion of patīccha-samuppāda, anattā and nibbāna is not pursued as an end in itself but subordinated to the notion of the spiritual path, which is hardly true of the discussion of causality, change and metaphysics in western thought. The danger is that we rather hastily translate the Nikāyas into terms that are more congenial to us without having first understood the original language.⁶

The important passages on vedanā in the Nikāyas come for the most part as part of descriptions of practices which in the terms of these texts lead to a cessation of dukkha ("suffering"). Western scholars have somehow overlooked the importance of the role vedanā, an importance which my survey of the use of this term clearly shows it has.

This thesis focuses on the texts of the Nikāyas. In her recent study, S. Hamilton explains why she chooses to use these texts as the focus for her research. Her comments apply also to my own situation:

I ... wanted to see what the earliest Pali material had to say on the subject before it was significantly adapted or elaborated as the Theravāda tradition developed. This approach is not so much intended to suggest that there is a pre-Theravāda form of Buddhism as to look at the primary texts without reference to how the tradition has interpreted them in later material.⁷

She notes that she is aware that this approach is "somewhat controversial,"⁸ and in a later study she discusses the dangers of "synchronic essentialism"⁹:

---

⁸ Ibid., p.xxx.
In effect, this is synchronically analysing a large, ancient, and undatable collection of texts without taking into account how they in all probability changed over a period of time. While one can thus come up with what seem to be the "essentials" of what they say, it may be that because the material developed incrementally there was never a time when the tradition itself viewed it in quite that way. I do no see a way around this problem ... Having said that, given the way the Pali Buddhist texts were preserved and compiled I do not see how anyone could treat the Sutta Pitaka other than broadly synchronically. Any attempt to take into account a diachronic perspective would immediately render one vulnerable to far more serious criticism ...\textsuperscript{10}

In this thesis I also treat the texts of the Nikāyas synchronically. For the most part I have only examined the Nikāyas, but there are a number of places where I have included some discussion of the views of the Pali commentators on certain passages.

One faces many difficulties when dealing with the texts of the Nikāyas. In discussing and analysing them, I am constantly reminded of some comments made by R. Gethin:

We are faced not so much with a single finished canvas as with a bewildering array of sketches and detailed studies which it is impossible to take in at once. Their subject is seen from different angles and in various aspects; it is viewed from near and afar.\textsuperscript{11}

My approach has been greatly influenced by the great German Indologist Wilhelm Halbfass. His sensitive approach to Indian texts has always struck me as worthy of imitation, though I fear that I often fail to fulfil the task that he outlines:

... it is our first responsibility to understand the Indian statements. But this in itself is a complex and elusive process. It requires, first of all, much learning, familiarization and assimilation. We have to be able to translate the texts into our

\textsuperscript{11} Gethin, 1992, p.20.
own languages; we have to listen to them as carefully and patiently as possible; we have to be aware of their traditional cultural context and background. But we also have to be aware of our own background... Mere familiarization and assimilation are not enough; this has to be supplemented by conceptual analysis and clarification. We are not just dealing with words.

The relationship and transition between familiarization and clarification is complex and elusive.¹²

The term vedanā is usually translated as “sensation” or “feeling”. For the purposes of this thesis, I have chosen to use this term untranslated.

My translations of Pali passages in this thesis are heavily indebted to the translations of Pali texts done by the Rhys Davids, I.B. Horner, F.L. Woodward, K.R. Norman, Bhikkhu Bodhi, Ānāmoli and Maurice Walshe.

Chapter One: Vedanā and the soteriological practices described in the four principal Nikāyas

The first part of this chapter is devoted to an examination of passages from a number of suttas which give importance to vedanā in descriptions of soteriological practices. Three suttas from the Dīghanikāyā will be studied, the Brahmajālasutta, the Mahānidānasutta and the Mahāparinibbānasutta. From the Majjhimanikāyā, we will look at five suttas, the Cūḷa- and Mahā-tanhāsaṅkhyasuttas, the Dīghanakhasutta (which is referred to in the Commentaries as the Vedanāpariggahanasutta), the Dhātuvibhaṅgasutta, and the Chachakkasutta. A number of suttas from the Saṅyuttanikāyā will also be studied, including some from the section of that nikāya devoted to suttas on the topic of vedanā, the Vedanāsaṅyutta.

The Brahmajālasutta

The first sutta of the Dīghanikāyā, the Brahmajālasutta, has a striking example of this usage of the term vedanā. The main part of this sutta\(^\text{13}\) describes various views, 62 in total, represented as being held by thinkers of the Buddha’s day. The 62 views are presented in groups, and after each group the following passage appears:

This, bhikkhus, the Tathāgata understands: These viewpoints thus grasped and adhered to will lead to such-and-such destinations in another world. This the Tathāgata knows, and more, but he is not attached to that knowledge. And being thus unattached he has experienced for himself perfect peace, and having understood as they really are the arising and passing away of vedanā, their attraction and danger and the escape from them, the Tathāgata is liberated without remainder.\(^\text{14}\)

\(^{13}\) From D I 12 onwards.

\(^{14}\) Tayidaṁ bhikkhave Tathāgato pajñātī: "Ime diṭṭhiṁ bhāvati evam-gahita evam-parāmaṁbhā evam-gatiṁ bhavissantī evam-abhisamparyāti ti. Taṁ ca Tathāgato pajñātī, itato ca uttarataraṁ pajñātī, taṁ ca pajñānam na parāmasati, aparāmasato c'assa paccattam yeva nibbuti viññāti, vedanānaṁ samudayaṁ ca atthagamaṁ ca assādayaṁ ca ādīnavaṁ ca nissaraṇaṁ ca yathā-bhūtaṁ viññāti anupādaṁ vimutto, bhikkhave, Tathāgato. DN I 16-17."
This passage occurs thirteen times and is an important structural element in this long sutta.

The term vedanā is given a privileged position in this key passage. The Buddha is represented as describing himself as completely enlightened (anupādā vimutto) when he has known as they are (yathābhūtām viditvā) certain characteristics of vedanā.

In the introduction to his translation of this sutta, Bhikkhu Bodhi makes the following comments on this passage (he translates vedanā as “feeling”):

Not understanding the real causes for their adherence [to views], the theorists delight in the feelings that arise conditioned by the proclamation of their views. This generates more craving and clinging in turn, as attempts to recapture the pleasant feelings, and these maintain the continued revolution of the round of existence. Since the basic root of the round, and the origin of suffering, is craving, and craving is conditioned by feeling, the Buddha singles out feeling as the existential factor most requiring examination to bring the round to an end. Feeling is the “bait of the round” (vattāmisā) which will be swallowed when left unexamined, but will be discarded if the hook it conceals is detected. Ignorance of feeling means not seeing its origin, passing away, satisfaction, unsatisfactoriness, and the escape from it, --the five angles from which any mundane phenomenon must be inspected to gain insight into its real nature. In order to contrast the ignorance of the theorists with his own wisdom, in the refrain following each of the expositions of views, the Buddha specifies his own understanding of feelings under these five headings.

Bhikkhu Bodhi acknowledges the crucial role that vedanā plays in this process “the Buddha singles out feeling as the existential factor most requiring examination to bring the round to an end.” I have not, however, been able to find any Pali text which refers to vedanā as vattāmisā.

The Mahāniddānasutta

In the Dīghanikāya’s Mahāniddānasutta the process of liberation is described with reference to sensations. This is done, however, in an unusual way, in a way which we do not find again in the Nikāyas. Here is the concluding section of the relevant passage:

From the time, Ananda, when a bhikkhu no longer regards *vedanā* as the self, or the self as being impercipient (*appatissanvedanaṃ*), or as being percipient (*attā me vediyati*) and of a nature to feel (*vedanādhammā*), by not so regarding, he does not cling to anything in the world. When he does not cling, he is not agitated. When he is not agitated, he personally attains Nibbāna. He understands: “Birth is destroyed, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more coming to any state of being.”

Three ways of regarding (*samunpassati*) *vedanā* in relation to the self (*attā*) are given here. When they are avoided, there is liberation.

R. Gethin has described the centrality of the critique of self in the Nikāyas:

The Buddhist critique of self is directed at all theories or views of the self that imply some sort of unchanging self whether that self is conceived of as eternal, immortal, or merely subsisting unchanged for the duration of a particular lifetime, or any period of time. As Prof. Norman has shown, the refutation of the Upanishadic identification of the ātman with the world is the primary focus of the critique of self contained in the Alaggaddāpama Sutta. Elsewhere Buddhist texts attack a whole range of views concerning the self.

In the preceding section of the Mahāniddānasutta, the Buddha explains why each of these ways of regarding the self is incorrect. The first of these, the view that “*vedanā* is my

---

17 Yato kho Ānanda bhikkhu n’eva vedanam attānaṃ samunpassati, no pi appatissanvedanaṃ attānaṃ samunpassati, no pi “Attā me vediyati, vedanādhammā hi me attā” ti samunpassati, so evam asanunpassato na kīcī loke upādīyati, anupādiyam na parissaddi, aparissadda paccattam yeva parinibbāyati, “Kāhā jāti, vusitaṃ bhavacetapiyam, katam karaṇiyam, nāparaṃ itthattiyati” pajiññāti. DN II 68
self”, that is the identification of vedanā with an abiding self, is refuted on the ground that vedanā is a changing phenomenon, conditioned, dependently arisen, subject to destruction.\(^{19}\) If the self is identified with vedanā, then the disappearance of the self has to be countenanced, which is out of the question for those who hold to the Upaniṣadic view of the self.

The second view holds that the self is not vedanā, that the self does not feel. This is refuted on the grounds that if nothing at all were felt, then there could not be the thought “I am”. The third view states that “Vedanā is not my self, but my self is not non-feeling, my self feels, my self is of the nature of vedanā (vedanā-dhammo)”. The refutation of this view seems to rest on the Buddha’s understanding that there is no vedanā in the state of full liberation—nibbāna. This view is expressed in various places in the Nikāyas. It is found in the reverse (patiloma) statement of the dependent-origination formula. The term used for the cessation of vedanā in the reverse statement of the dependent-origination formula is also used in the Buddha’s refutation here: “vedanā-nirodhāt”. Identifying one’s self as “of the nature of vedanā” (vedanā-dhammā) cannot be correct in terms of the ultimate truth of a fully liberated person, because there is a state where vedanā ceases, that is nibbāna.

Steven Collins has given a useful summary of this passage:

... the Buddha asks “how many ways are there in which (a man can) regard self?”. His interlocutor, the monk Ānanda, answers that there are three: feeling is regarded as identical with self, in the words “feeling is my self”; or the self is regarded as without feeling, “my self is insentient”; or neither of these things is the case but “my self feels, my self has the attribute of feeling”.

The Buddha declares that it is “not fitting” (na kkhamati) to regard the matter in any of these ways, for the following reasons. In the first case, where self and feeling are identical, he says that feeling is of three types, pleasant, painfūl, and neutral. With which is the self to be identified, since only one type can occur at any given time? All three types of feeling are impermanent, causally conditioned

\(^{19}\) vedanā aniccā saṅkhata paṭiccasamappannā khaya-dhamnā DN II 66
phenomena, so that in any case the self would have to be the same, subject to arising and decay. This is an idea so manifestly untenable for the Buddha as to receive no comment. In the second place, where the self was held to be insentient, the Buddha asks, “where there is no feeling at all, is it possible that one might say “I am”? Since this is not possible, the view is again “not fitting”. In the third place, where the self is held to feel, or have the attribute of feeling, he asks a similar question: “where feeling is completely absent ... might one be able to say “this (is what) I am”? Here also, since this is not possible, the view is “not fitting”.

Liberation comes from not regarding Ṛvedanā and atta in any of these three ways (so evam asamānupassanto).

The Mahāparinibbānasutta

The third sutta of the second volume of the Dīghanikāya is the famous Mahāparinibbānasutta. This long sutta follows the last days and the passing away of the Buddha. Immediately after the description of the passing away of the Buddha, there is a series of four verses. The fourth is shown as being spoken by one of the leading disciples of the Buddha, Anuruddha:

There was no breathing in and breathing out for such a one with steadfast mind; unmoved, aiming at peace, the muni died.

With undisheartened mind he bore sensation; like the quenching of a lamp was the release of his mind.

---

21 The commentary on this passage explains these three statements in a rather curious way. It sees all five aggregates covered by the three statements, the first statement identifying the self with the vedanā aggregate, the second identifying the self with the aggregate of matter, or the body (rūpa), and the third identifying the self with the aggregates of perception, saṅkhāras and consciousness. The commentary states that these last three aggregates are to be understood in the final statement “because they are associated with vedanā” (vedanisampayuttā). Sv II 505.
22 Nāhu anāsākasa-paccāsa ṛṭhita-cittassa rādino.
Anejo saṅām ārabbbha yaṁ kālam akāri muni
Asallīnena cītena vedanāṁ aṭṭhavāsāyi:
Pajjotass’eva nibbānāṁ vimokko ceiasso abhūti. DN II 157
The Buddha’s passing away is also, in these texts, the moment of his final liberation from suffering, his final entering of nibbāna which is free from suffering. This is the so-called parinibbāna. Here this moment of dying (kālam akāri) and of release (vimokho) is described along with the “bearing” or “enduring” (ajjhavāsai) of vedanā.

Whether or not the term vedanā has the same meaning here as it does in the Brahmajālasutta, and whether or not it is playing the same role in the description of the soteriological process that we find in the Brahmajālasutta are important questions. To help us find answers to these questions we need to examine the context of these verses more closely. The final parinibbāna of the Buddha takes place in the sixth recitation section (bhānāvāra) of the Mahāparinibbānasutta. In the second recitation section, there is an episode which describes the Buddha falling sick which includes the following passage:

Now during the rainy season, a severe sickness arose in the Fortunate One, with sharp vedanā as if he were about to die. But the Fortunate One bore them mindfully, with understanding and without being disturbed.²³

The term vedanā here refers only to unpleasant sensations experienced in sickness. There are a number of places in the Nikāyas where the term vedanā is associated with sickness. Generally speaking, it is not usually used in these contexts as part of a description of a soteriological process. However, the two terms that we find here describing the manner in which the Buddha bears these vedanās, sata (“mindful”) and sampajāna (“with understanding”), are both of vital importance in certain soteriological practices described in the Nikāyas. They are of particular importance in the two suttas on the establishing of mindfulness, the Satipaṭṭhānasuttas, and at other places in the Nikāyas where the practice of the establishing of mindfulness is discussed.

In the fourth recitation section, the Buddha takes what is to be his last meal. After the meal he falls sick again, and the description here is almost identical with that given for his earlier illness, quoted above. So at this significant juncture in the narrative, we again

²³ Aṭṭhakatho Bhagavato vassūpagatassa kho rājā abhījho upppajji, bājhā vedanā vattantī māraṇatā. Tū sudāpi Bhagavā sato sampajāno udhīvāseti avihānānāno. DN II 99
find this combination of the bearing of *vedanā*, and of being *sata* (mindful) and *sampajñana* (with understanding).

By the time Anuruddha’s verses come, immediately after the passing away of the Buddha, the cumulative effect allows us to interpret the “bearing of sensations” as a soteriologically important element in the description of the last moments of the Enlightened One which are given in those verses.\(^{24}\)

The Satipatthānasutta

The four establishings of mindfulness (*satipatthānas*) are amongst the most important of the soteriological practices described in the Nikāyas. They figure in the summary of the Buddha’s teaching known as the *Bodhipakkhiyadhammas* (factors leading to Enlightenment), which are found at numerous places in the Nikāyas. There are two Satipatthānasuttas in the Nikāyas, one in the Dīghanikāya, the other in the Majjhimanikāya, differing in that one of the sections is considerably expanded in the former. The former is thus known as the Mahāsatipatthānasutta (the Great Satipatthānasutta). They are the most detailed and comprehensive accounts of these practices in the Nikāyas.\(^{25}\) The soteriological aim of the establishing of mindfulness practices is described in unambiguous terms in the opening passage of the *sutta* (D II 290): they are for the experiencing (or realisation) of nibbāna (*nibbānassa sacchikiriya*). The four establishings of mindfulness are then briefly given in a formulaic phrase which is applied to each of them. The four are the observation of the body (*kāyānupassanā*), the observation of *vedanā* (*vedanānupassanā*), the observation of the mind (*cittānupassanā*) and the observation of mental phenomenon (*dhammānupassanā*).

The body of the *sutta* is divided into four sections, each treating one of the four establishings of mindfulness. The section devoted to the observation of *vedanā* is relatively short, covering just one page, whereas the section on the observation of the body comes to seven pages and the one on the observation of mental contents sixteen

\(^{24}\) These verses of Anuruddha also appear in the Saṁyuttanikāya (SN I 2).

\(^{25}\) The references here will be to the Dīghanikāya version.
pages. The practice described is the knowing (pajānāti) by the bhikkhu of the type of vedanā that he is experiencing, according to certain categories. When he is experiencing pleasant (sukha) vedanā, he knows that he is experiencing pleasant vedanā. The same formula is given for unpleasant (dukkha) vedanā and for vedanā which is neither pleasant nor unpleasant (adukkhumsukha). This three-fold formula is then given two more times, the first for each of the three kinds of vedanā which is associated with greed (sāmīsa), and then for each of the three as not associated with greed (nirāmisa).

The section on the observation of vedanā ends with a passage which is identical to the concluding passages for each section of the other three establishings of mindfulness, the only difference being that here we find the word vedanā whereas in the kāyānupassanā section we find the word kāya, in the cittānupassanā section we kind the word citta, etc. The practice described in this passage is not, therefore, specific to vedanā.

In the overall design of the sutta, the observation of vedanā does not receive any more emphasis than the three other practices. There are, however, other places in the Nikāyas where the practice of satipaṭṭhāna is given a special connection with vedanā.

The Satosutta (SN V.23):

The Satosutta gives a marked emphasis to the understanding of vedanā in connection with this practice. This is one of the short suttas in the Satipaṭṭhānasamyutta, the section devoted to the four establishings of mindfulness in the Saṁyuttaniyāyā. The sutta begins with a phrase which introduces the two main elements of the practice, and then underlines the importance of this practice. The two elements are then briefly described:

Bhikkhus, a bhikkhu should remain mindful and with full understanding. This is my teaching to you.
And how, bhikkhus, is a bhikkhu mindful? ...
And how, bhikkhus, is a bhikkhu possessed of full understanding? Here, bhikkhus, the bhikkhu knows that vedanā arise, that they remain, and that they disappear. He knows that thoughts arise, that they remain, and that they
disappear. He knows that perceptions arise, that they remain, and that they disappear.\footnote{Sato bhikkhave bhikkhu vihareyya sampajāṇo, ayaṃ vo anahākam anusāsanī. Kathāsā bhikkhave bhikkhu saito hoti. \ldots \kathāsā bhikkhave bhikkhu sampajāṇo hoti. Īdha bhikkhave bhikkhuno viditā vedanā upajjanti, viditā upaṭṭhahanti, viditā abhikkhatthāgam gacchanti. Viditā vitakka upajjanti \ldots \, \textit{SN} V 180-81.}

The description of the bhikkhu who is mindful (sato) is the same as the description of the four establishings of mindfulness at the beginning of the Satipaṭṭhānasuttas.\footnote{D II 290 and MN I 56.} The description of the bhikkhu who is possessed of full understanding (sampajāṇo) is not, however, found in those suttas, and it is here that vedanā plays an important role. The practice of one who is possessed of full understanding is described firstly as knowing the characteristic of impermanence of vedanā, and then of thoughts (vitakka), and of perceptions (saṁsā). Once again we find vedanā associated with the concept of impermanence in the description of a soteriological practice. The Buddha is represented as describing these practices as "my teaching to you [i.e. to the bhikkhus]" (ayaṃ vo anahākam anusāsanī). There are numerous statements in the Nikāyas which represent the Buddha as stating that the main, indeed the sole, concern of his teaching is the soteriological.\footnote{For example, "Bhikkhus, both formerly and now what I teach is suffering and the cessation of suffering." (Pubbecāyaṃ bhikkhave etarāhi ca dukkhan eva pannāpi dukkhasa ca nirodhaṃ. MN I 140.)} Here this teaching is said to be connected with the understanding of vedanā.

The short passage describing the arising, staying and passing away of vedanā, thoughts and perceptions occurs in a number of other places in the Nikāyas. In the Acchāriyabbhutadhammassutta of the Majjhimanikāya, Ānanda, the Buddha’s chief attendant, gives, in the presence of the Buddha, a list of the Buddha’s “wonderful and marvellous qualities” (acchāriyā abbhutadhannī). These qualities are chiefly concerned with supernatural events which took place at the time of the birth of Gotama, and the description of them takes up most of the sutta. At the end of Ānanda’s account, the Buddha says to Ānanda that he should also remember another of his qualities, which he then gives in the following terms:
Here, Ānanda, the Tathāgata knows that vedanā arise, that they remain, and that they disappear.\textsuperscript{29}

The same is said for perceptions (saññā) and thoughts (vitakka) as in the passage quoted above which describes a bhikkhu who is possessed of full understanding. The passage is thus given a very marked emphasis in this sutta. As Bhikkhu Bodhi has noted in his translation of this sutta, “[t]his statement seems to be the Buddha's way of calling attention to the quality he regarded as the true wonder and marvel.”\textsuperscript{30}

The Cūlataṅgaśaṅkhayasutta

In the Majjhimanikāya there are two suttas about the “destruction of craving” (tanha-saṅkhaya), the 37th sutta of that collection, the Cūlataṅgaśaṅkhayasutta (the Shorter Discourse on the Destruction of Craving), and the 38th, the Mahātaṅgaśaṅkhayasutta (the Greater Discourse on the Destruction of Craving). In both of these suttas, vedanā plays an important role in descriptions of the process of liberation. In the first, the setting is a mythological one. Sakka, the ruler of the gods, is represented as asking the Buddha to explain to him briefly (saṅkhittena) how a bhikkhu is liberated by the destruction of craving. The reply is given as follows:

Here, ruler of gods, a bhikkhu has heard that nothing is worth adhering to. When a bhikkhu has heard that nothing is worth adhering to, he directly knows everything; having directly known everything, he fully understands everything; having fully understood everything, whatever vedanā he feels, whether pleasant or painful or neither painful-nor-pleasant, he abides observing impermanence in those vedanā, observing fading away, observing cessation, observing relinquishment. Observing thus, he does not cling to anything in the world. When he does not cling, he is not agitated. When he is not agitated, he personally attains Nibbāna. He understands: “Birth is destroyed, the holy life has been

\textsuperscript{29} Idī, Ānanda, Tathāgatassa visītiā vedanā uppaṭṭhanti, visītiā upapajjanti, visītiā abhivatātthānā gacchanti. MN III 124.

lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more coming to any state of being."  

The formula given to describe the enlightened bhikkhu is a standard one used to describe an arahant.

The role of *vedanā* in this process is clearly of great importance. Having fully understood all phenomena (*sabbaṃ dhammam*), the bhikkhu observes four phenomena with regard to *vedanā*. Firstly he is described as abiding observing impermanence with regard to *vedanā* (*so tāsū vedanasu aniccānupassī viharati*). He is thus applying one of the fundamental concepts of the thought world of the Nikāyas to *vedanā*. He also abides observing fading away (*virāga*), cessation (*nirodha*) and relinquishment (*paṭinissagga*) with regard to *vedanā*. *Vedanā* is the basis for all of these observations. The text goes directly from these observations to the description of the bhikkhu not clinging to anything in the world, and thus becoming liberated.

The significance of this passage is emphasized by being repeated twice further on in the *sutta*. It is also found in a *sutta* in the Aṅguttaranikāya\(^{32}\), indicating that it was considered to be of some importance by the compilers of these texts.

The Mahāṭāpaññāsaṅkhayasutta

The second of the pair of *suttas* on the destruction of craving, the Mahāṭāpaññāsaṅkhayasutta, also gives much emphasis to *vedanā* in its description of the process of liberation. This remarkable *sutta* calls for a detailed analysis.

The passage relevant to the term *vedanā* occurs as part of a longer passage which begins by explaining the conditions for the conception of a child. The period of the mother's

---

\(^{31}\) Idha devānasam inda bhikkhuo sutaṃ hoti: sabbe dhammā nālaṃ abhinīvesyā ti. Evaṃ ce devānam inda bhikkhuo sutaṃ hoti: sabbe dhammā nālaṃ abhinīvesyā ti, so sabbaṃ dhammam abhijānati, sabbaṃ dhammam parijānati, sabbaṃ dhammam parimāṇya yaṃ kaści vedanaṃ vedeti, sukhām vā dukkhām vā adukkhāmasukhaṃ vā, so tāsū vedanasu aniccānupassī viharati, virāgānupassī viharati, nirodhānupassī viharati, paṭinissaggānupassī viharati; so tāsū vedanasu aniccānupassī viharanto... na kiṃ loke upādiyati, anupādiyati na paritassati, aparitassāṃ paccattaṃ yeva parinibbāyati, "Khīṇā jāti, vussaṃ brahmaṇacaritraṃ, katam karaṇīyaṃ, nāparaṃ iṭṭhāya" pažānāti. (MN I 251, also on p.254 and 255.)

\(^{32}\) AN IV 88
pregnancy, her giving birth to the child and her feeding it with her milk are then briefly described. The text then goes on to explain two things which follow on from the growth of the child and the “ripening” (paripāka) of his sense organs (indriya). The first is that the child plays with various toys and at various games. We are even given some examples of these: “with a toy windmill, with a toy cart, with a toy bow.” This whole passage is quite remarkable: we are far from the abstractions of philosophers, but are dealing with concrete, everyday reality.

The other situation specified as following on from the child’s growth and the development of his sense organs is his enjoyment of the five “strands of sense-pleasures” (kāmagukha). This leads into the sequence in which vedanā plays a key role. The sequence is given twice. Firstly we have a description of the process by which suffering arises, and then after that comes a description of the process by which suffering ceases, the process of liberation from suffering. Each of these descriptions is six-fold in structure; the first gives the following passage for the five physical senses and for the mind:

When he has seen a material shape through the eye, he feels attraction for agreeable material shapes, he feels repugnance for disagreeable material shapes; and he dwells without mindfulness aroused as to the body, with a mind that is limited; and he does not comprehend that freedom of mind and that freedom through intuitive wisdom as they really are, whereby those evil unskilled states of his are stopped without remainder. Possessed thus of compliance and antipathy, whatever vedanā he feels—pleasant or painful or neither painful nor pleasant—he delights in that vedanā, welcomes it and persists in cleaving to it.  

The person described in this passage dwells anupatthita-kāya-sati (“without mindfulness aroused as to the body”). This is the negative form of the word upatthita-kāya-sati, upatthita having the sense of “standing up ready, with attention fixed” (PED). It is in

---

33 MN 1266
34 So cakkhaṇā rūpaṃ disvā piyarāpe rūpe sārajjati, appiyārāpe rūpe bvāpajjati, anupatthitakāyasati ca viharati paritucetasa, tāt-c ca cetovinnutim pāññāvinnutim yathābhūtām na-ppajjānati yath’asse te pāpakā akusāla dharmā aparisesā nirujjhanti. So evam anurodhavirodham samāpanno yaṃ kahi vedanāṃ vedeti, sukhāṃ vai dukkhaṃ vai adukkhamasukhaṃ vai, so taṃ vedanaṃ abhinandati abhivadati ajjhosāya tiṭṭhati. MN I 266
this state that he develops attraction for the pleasant sense objects and repugnance for the unpleasant. This, then, is the base from which taṇhā arises, the “thirst” which keeps the mind unbalanced and which is the cause of suffering (dukkha) as explained in the second Noble Truth. But the passage goes further, probing deeper into this phenomenon.

First comes another brief description of this condition: so evam anurodhavirodham samāpanno. I.B. Horner translates this passage as “possessed thus of compliance and antipathy”, and notes that this phrase is explained in the Pali commentary as “attachment as well as hatred”. 35 Thus it is a kind of summary of the preceding sentence with its description of one who feels attraction (sārajati) and repugnance (byāpajjati). It is in this context that the text proceeds to make its important point about vedanā:

whatever vedanā he feels—pleasant or painful or neither painful nor pleasant—he delights in that sensation, welcomes it and persists in cleaving to it. 36

The passage continues with an explanation of the result of this:

From delighting in that vedanā, from welcoming it, from persisting in cleaving to it, delight arises; whatever is delight amid those vedanā, that is grasping; conditioned by grasping is becoming; conditioned by becoming is birth; conditioned by birth, old age and dying, grief, sorrow, suffering, lamentation and despair come into being. Such is the arising of this entire mass of suffering. 37

The latter part of this passage belongs to the standard pāṭicca-samuppāda formula.

The sutta continues with a passage which is also found in the Sāmaññaphalasutta of the Dīghanikāya, and which recurs in many suttas of the Majjhimanikāya. It describes the development of a disciple from the moment he acquires confidence in the Buddha’s

36 yam kañci vedanāṁ vedeti, sukhāṁ vā dukkhaṁ vā adukkhamasukhāṁ vā, so taṁ vedanaṁ abhinandati abhivadato ajjhosīya tīṭhati. MN I 266
37 Tassa taṁ vedanāṁ abhinandato abhivadato ajjhosīya tīṭhato uppajjati nandi, yā vedanāsu nandi taddupādānam, tass’ upādānapaccayā bhavo, bhavapaccayā jāti, jātipaccayā jārimaranam sokaparidevadukkhadomanassupāyāsa saṁbhavanti, evam-etassa kevalassa dukkakkhandhassa samudayo hoti. MN I 267
 teachings to his attainment of arahantship. The sequence follows its standard course up until the description of the four jhānas. From this point we return to the subject matter of the passage immediately preceding this sequence, that is to kāya-sati, vedanā and the paticca-samuppāda. The sequence of psychological events is identical, but the sense is inverted, each sentence now being in the negative. Thus instead of the phrase

... he feels attraction for agreeable material shapes... \(^{38}\)

we find

... he does not feel attraction for agreeable material shapes... \(^{39}\)

Awareness of the body (kāya-sati) is now upatthita, (PED: “standing up (ready)”), whereas in the earlier passage it is anupatthita. This person no longer delights in vedanā (so taṁ vedanam nābhīnandati); the delight (nandī) in vedanā ceases:

\[ yā vedanāsu nandī sā nirujjhati... \(^{40}\) \]

And from this point the reverse sequence of the paticca-samuppāda is given, ending with the usual formula:

Thus this entire mass of suffering ceases. \(^{41}\)

This is the goal of the Buddha’s teaching, the cessation of suffering, and in this sutta it is related directly and in detail to a practice connected with the awareness of vedanā.

The Dīghanakhasutta

The Buddha’s discourse to the wanderer Dīghanakha in the Majjhimanikāya, the Dīghanakhasutta, is of great significance for understanding the role of vedanā in the

\(^{38}\) ... piyārīpe rūpe sārajjati.. MN I 266
\(^{39}\) ... piyārīpe rūpe na sārajjati.. MN I 270
\(^{40}\) Ibid.
\(^{41}\) evam etassa kevalassa dukkhasamudgassā nirodho hoti, Ibid.
soteriological process. It seems that the ancient commentators on these texts understood that *vedanā* is of great importance in this *sutta*, for they refer to it as the Vedanāpariggañhānasutta, the Discourse on the Grasping of Sensation.\textsuperscript{42} The significance of the passage in which the soteriological process is described is underlined by some of the events in the narrative setting. Immediately after the Buddha has finished his address to Dīghanakha, we are told that Sāriputta had been standing behind the Buddha while the discourse was going on. Sāriputta is counted as one of the two chief disciples of the Buddha. This important personage is shown as thinking favourably of the discourse, and while he is doing this "his mind was liberated from the āsavas (defilements) by not clinging."\textsuperscript{43} In a number of places in the commentaries, it is related that this is the moment when Sāriputta became an Arahant, while listening to this discourse of the Buddha's on *vedanā*.

The first part of the passage on *vedanā* in this *sutta* is identical with a part of the section on *vedanā* in the Mahāniddānasutta, examined above. This is the Buddha's refutation of the first manner of regarding the self (atta) and *vedanā*, the identification of the self with *vedanā*. As in the Mahāniddānasutta passage, the Buddha here begins by stating that there are three *vedanā*, pleasant, painful and those which are neither painful nor pleasant. Further on he characterizes each of these *vedanā* with a list of adjectives. For pleasant *vedanā*, for example, we find the following phrase (the Buddha addresses Dīghanakha as Aggivessana, which is probably his clan name):

> Pleasant *vedanā*, Aggivessana, is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen, subject to destruction, vanishing, fading away and ceasing.\textsuperscript{44}

After this passage, the text of the Dīghanakhasutta departs from that of the Mahāniddānasutta. The next passage in the Dīghanakhasutta describes the process by which a "noble disciple" (*ariyasāvaka*) becomes enlightened with this knowledge:

\textsuperscript{42} Sv II 418, III 882 and Ps II 862, IV 87, Mp I 92, 321, also DhA I 79; ThagA II 95
\textsuperscript{43} anupādāya āsavēhi citthān vimuccit \textsuperscript{44} MN I 501
\textsuperscript{44} Sukhā pi kho Aggivessana *vedanā* anicca sañkhātā paccassamuppānā khayadhānaṃ vayadhānaṃ virāgadhānaṃ nirodhdhānaṃ (MN I 500)
Seeing thus, a well-taught noble disciple becomes disenchanted with pleasant vedanā, disenchanted with painful vedanā, disenchanted with neither-painful-nor-pleasant vedanā. Being disenchanted, he becomes dispassionate. Through dispassion [his mind] is liberated. When it is liberated there comes the knowledge: “It is liberated”. He understands: “Birth is destroyed, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more coming to any state of being.”

The final phrases of this passage are standard formulations for an enlightened person and are found throughout the Nikāyas. The earlier part of the passage places great emphasis on vedanā in this description of a practice which results in liberation from suffering.

The Dhātuvihaṅgasutta

Vedanā plays a rather different role in a description of the process of liberation in the Dhātuvihaṅgasutta of the Majjhimanikāya. Here an important passage on vedanā comes after the description of the process of liberation; it shows how the enlightened person responds to different vedanā.

This occurs as part of a long section which is a commentary on the first words of a short formula given near the beginning of the sutta: “one should not neglect wisdom.” The text asks, “And how, bhikkhu, does one not neglect wisdom?” Towards the end of the long passage which is the reply to this question comes the description of liberation, after a sequence in which a person comes to understand that the four “formless” (arūpa) states are conditioned (saṅkhātā). One of the standard formulas to describe the process of liberation follows this:

He does not cling to anything in the world. When he does not cling, he is not agitated. When he is not agitated, he personally attains Nibbāna.

45 Evaṃ passaṃ arisingvako sukhaṃ yā vedanāya nibbindati, dukkhaṃ yā... nibbindam virājjarī, virāga vimuccati, vimuttaṃ nibbuddham - iññānaṃ hoti; kхиṃ jāti, vusum brahmaṇaṃ, katam tanaññam nāparaṃ itthattāyīti paññāti. MN I 500
46 paññān appamajjeyya MN III 239
understands: “Birth is destroyed, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more coming to any state of being.”

Then comes the passage in which the way in which the enlightened person just described experiences *vedanā*:

If he feels a pleasant *vedanā*, he understands: “It is impermanent; there is no holding to it; there is no delight in it.” If he feels a painful *vedanā*, he understands: “It is impermanent; there is no holding to it; there is no delight in it.” If he feels a neither-painful-nor-pleasant *vedanā*, he understands: “It is impermanent; there is no holding to it; there is no delight in it.” If he feels a pleasant *vedanā*, he feels it detached. If he feels a painful *vedanā*, he feels it detached. If he feels a neither-painful-nor-pleasant *vedanā*, he feels it detached.

Once again we find the association of impermanence, one of the key notions of the Nikāyas, and *vedanā*. Another important idea which we have seen associated with *vedanā* in the Mahātapāhāsaṅkhayasutta is also found here, that of not clinging (*anajihosita*). And as in that *sutta* also, delight is not taken in *vedanā* (*anabhinandita*).

This significant passage on the “correct” way to respond to *vedanā* of different types is found in a number of other places in the Nikāyas. Its importance is in this way underlined. In one of the *suttas* of the Nidānasamyyutta⁴⁹ and one of the *suttas* of the Khandhasamyyutta,⁵⁰ it occurs, as it does in the Dhātuvibhāṅgasutta, after the “Birth is destroyed” (*khiṇī jāti*) formula which indicates that the bhikkhu is fully liberated. In one of the *suttas* of the fifth volume of the Saṁyuttanikāya,⁵¹ it occurs after a description of a bhikkhu who has developed a series of meditational stages know as the four *jhānas*, the four “formless states” and the cessation of perception and sensation.

---

⁴⁹ *na kīnī loke upādīyati anupādiyam na paritassati aparitassam paccattam yeva parinibbāyati: Khiṇī jāti vusitaṃ brahmācarīyaṃ, katam karaṇīyaṃ nāparaṃ iṭhatāyati pajānati. MN III 244*
⁵⁰ *So sukhāti ce vedanānaṃ vedeti, Sī unīcā ti pajānati; Anajihosita ti pajānati; Anabhinandita ti pajānati. Dukkhaḥti ce vedanaṃ vedeti… So sukhāti ce vedanānaṃ vedeti, visāmyutto nañjī vedeti; so dukkhaḥ ce vedanaṃ vedeti, visāmyutto nañjī vedeti, adukkhamasukhāti ce vedanānaṃ vedeti, visāmyutto nañjī vedeti. MN III 244.*
⁵¹ *SN II 82*
⁵² *SN III 126*
⁵³ *SN V 319*
(saññāvedayitanirodha). It also occurs in one of the suttas of the Vedanāsanyutta, the section of the Sānyuttaniyaka which is devoted to suttas on the topic of vedanā.  

The Chachakkasutta

In the Chachakkasutta of the Majjhimanikāya, vedanā plays a key role in a passage which first describes how one does not make an end of suffering, and which then goes on to describe how one does do this. Making an end of suffering is equivalent to attaining the goal of liberation, so this passage is of great significance to our study. The second part of this passage is as follows:

When one is touched by a pleasant vedanā, if one does not delight in it, welcome it, and remain holding to it, then the underlying tendency to craving does not lie within one. When one is touched by painful vedanā, if one does not sorrow, grieve and lament, does not weep beating one’s breast and become distraught, then the underlying tendency to aversion does not lie within one. When one is touched by a neither-painful-nor-pleasant vedanā, if one understands as it really is the arising and passing away of vedanā, its attraction and danger and the escape from it, then the underlying tendency to ignorance does not lie within one.

Bhikkhus, that one shall here and now make an end of suffering by abandoning the underlying tendency to craving for pleasant vedanā, by abolishing the underlying tendency to aversion towards painful vedanā, by extirpating the underlying tendency to ignorance in regard to neither-painful-nor-pleasant vedanā, by abandoning ignorance and arousing knowledge—this is possible.

In this passage, the soteriological process is described in terms of vedanā and the “underlying tendencies” or “(latent) dispositions” (CPD) (anusaya). Certain types of

32 SN IV 213
33 dukkhas” antakaro bhavissadīti a’etanā thānaṃ vijitāi MN II 285
34 So sukkhāya vedanāya phuṭṭho samāno nābhīnantatā nābhīvadatā nājīhosāya tiṭṭhati; tassa rāgānusayo nānuseti. Dukkhāya vedanāya phuṭṭho samāno nā socati na kīvamati na paridevati na uruttājan kandati na sammohanā pāpāyati; tassa patīghānusayo nānuseti. Adukkhāmasukkhāya vedanāya phuṭṭho samāno tassā vedanāya samudayatha ca attaṃgamaṇaṃ ca aṭṭhāvahaṃ ca nissaraṇiṃ ca yothabhiṣaṭṭhaṃ pajaradā; tassa avijjānusayo nānuseti. So vata, bhikkhave, sukkhāya vedanāya rāgānusayanā pahāya dukuṭṭha ya vedanāya patīghānusayanā patīghino devatā adukkhāmasukkhāya vedanāya avijjānusayanā samudayiteva avijjānaṃ pahāya vijjam uppādāyatvā diṭṭhe va dharmme dukkhasa antakaro bhavissatīti, thānaṃ etanāṃ vijitāi. MN III 286.
anusayas are eradicated in relation to certain types of vedanā, and the result of this is the arising of knowledge (vijjā) and the end of suffering, that is, liberation.

The Puttamaprasasutta of the Nidānasamīyutta

There is a short passage in a sutta of the Nidānasamīyutta which gives a great deal of emphasis to vedanā in the soteriological process.

When the three vedanā are well understood, I declare that there is nothing further which the noble disciple has to do.\(^{55}\)

The phrase “nothing further to be done” (natthi kīñci uttarīṇa karaṇīyam) means that the noble disciple’s goal of full liberation has been reached.

Later in this sutta the same passage recurs, firstly with the words “the three cravings”\(^{56}\) replacing “the three vedanā”, and then with the words “name and form.”\(^{57}\) Thus according to this sutta’s account, the full comprehension of vedanā is one of three ways of achieving full liberation.

The Vedanā-samīyutta

Third sutta, Pahānena

The Vedanāsamīyutta of the Samīyuttanikāya is perhaps the most important source of information in the Nikāyas on the term vedanā. Many of its suttas describe aspects of the soteriological process. The third sutta of the Vedanāsamīyutta, the Pahānenasutta, puts great emphasis on the role of vedanā in its description of a practice of this type. The sutta begins with a passage which is a kind of summary of the passage looked at above in the Chachakkasutta of the Majjhimanikāya in which the soteriological process is explained in connection with the “underlying tendencies” (anusayas). As in the Chachakkasutta, certain types of anusayas are eradicated in relation to certain types of

---

\(^{55}\) tissu vedanāsu pariṇātītu su ariyasāvakassa natthi kīñci uttarīṇa karaṇīyam vaddānī. SN II 99.

\(^{56}\) tisso vippattī, SN II 100

\(^{57}\) nāmaripa SN II 100
vedanā, and it is said that the bhikkhu who eradicates these anusayas has made an end of suffering (antam akāsi dukkhaśa SN IV 205).

This description occurs in a prose passage at the beginning of the sutta. This is followed by six lines of verse which repeat the same sentiment. The sutta then ends with another four lines of verse which are of great importance for understanding the role of vedanā in the soteriological process.

But when a bhikkhu who is ardent
does not neglect complete understanding,
Then that wise man fully understands
Vedanā in their entirety.

Having fully understood vedanā
He is free from āsavas in this very life.
Firm in Dhamma’s ways, with the body’s breakup
The one who has knowledge cannot be reckoned.⁵⁸

Here we find terms from the description of the practice of the four establishings of mindfulness associated with the full comprehension (pariññā) of vedanā, and the result of this is described as full liberation. The bhikkhu “does not let go of” (na riñcati) sampajāñña (“complete understanding”), one of the qualities described in the opening passage of the Satipaṭṭhānasuttas. The term “ardent” (āṭāpin) also appears in this part of the Satipaṭṭhānasuttas, and we find it again in this sutta. The bhikkhu thus has full comprehension of (parijñāti) all vedanās, and he is wise (pañciita). In the final two lines, the bhikkhu, having fully understood vedanā (So vedanā pariññāya), is said to be free from the āsavas. He is called “one who has knowledge” (vedagu) and at death he does not return to the finite world (saṅkhā).

Fifth sutta, the Daṭṭhabbbenasutta.

⁵⁸ Yato ce kho bhikkhu ātāpi, sampajāññaṃ na riñcati
Tato so vedanā sabbā, parijñāti pañciito
So vedanā pariññāya, diṭṭhe dhamme anākavo
Kāyassa bhedī dhammaṭṭho, saṅkhāṃ no peti vedagū ti. SN IV 206
The last four lines of verse are repeated further on in the Vedanāsaṇyutta: they provide the concluding lines to the twelfth *sutta* of the collection, the Ākāsasutta. The final two lines are found again in the fifth *sutta* of the Vedanāsaṇyutta, the Daṭṭhabbenasutta. This *sutta* describes another way in which a bhikkhu can “make an end of suffering” in connection with *vedanā*:

When a bhikkhu regards pleasant *vedanā* as suffering, painful *vedanā* as a barb, neutral *vedanā* as impermanence, such a one is called, bhikkhu, “rightly seeing”. He... has made an end of suffering.\(^5^9\)

The logic of seeing pleasant *vedanā* as suffering is explained, as we have noticed, in another *sutta* of the Vedanāsaṇyutta (SN IV 216): pleasant *vedanā* is a source of suffering because it is, like all compounded things (*saṅkhāras*), subject to destruction, decay and change.

The Sallasutta.

The theme of unpleasant *vedanā* being a barb, mentioned in the Daṭṭhabbenasutta, is elaborated upon in the next *sutta*, the Sallasutta. The term barb occurs in a simile which likens a person who is not a noble disciple experiencing an unpleasant *vedanā* and as a consequence becoming agitated to a person who is pierced by two barbs. The noble disciple, on the other hand, is pierced by only one barb: he feels the unpleasant *vedanā*, but his mind does not suffer as a result. The noble disciple is then described as not having aversion to unpleasant *vedanā* and thus eradicating the “underlying tendencies” (*anusaya*) associated with unpleasant *vedanā*, as not delighting in pleasant *vedanā* and thus eradicating the *anusaya* related to pleasant *vedanā*, and as understanding the impermanent nature of sensations which are neither pleasant nor unpleasant and thus eradicating the *anusaya* which are associated with them.

\(^5^9\) *Yato kho bhikkhave bhikkhuno sukhā vedanā dukkhato diṭṭhā hoti, dukkhā vedanā sallato diṭṭhā hoti, adukkhamasukkhā vedanā aniccato diṭṭhā hoti, ayaṃ vaccati bhikkhave bhikkhu samuddassato... antum akāsi dukkhassā ti*. SN IV 207.
This is followed by a passage which we have encountered in the Dhātuvibhaṅgasutta of the Majjhimanikāya.

If he feels a pleasant vedanā, he feels it detached. If he feels a painful vedanā, he feels it detached. If he feels a neither-painful-nor-pleasant vedanā, he feels it detached.63

Here the soteriological import of the practice described in this passage is made explicit and unambiguous by a concluding sentence which is not found in the Dhātuvibhaṅgasutta. The Buddha is represented as stating

I say that this noble disciple is called “detached from birth, old age, death, grief, suffering, dejection and despair, detached from suffering”. 61

The phrasing of this sentence repeats the cadences of the previous passage which refer to the noble disciple as being detached from the various types of vedanā. The detachment from suffering that is mentioned here is, in the terms of the Nikāyas, the state of liberation.

Vedanā and the four noble truths

The first sutta of the Vedanāsamyutta

The first sutta of the Vedanāsamyutta is another which features vedanā in a description of soteriological practices. The first sutta is significant in this respect in two ways. It explains in four lines of verse how a bhikkhu becomes “free from craving” (nicchāta) and “fully liberated” (parinibbutta). Firstly the bhikkhu is described with the following line:

Concentrated, fully understanding, aware is the disciple of the Buddha.62

---

63 So sukhaṁ ce vedanāṁ vedeti, visamyutto naṁ vedeti; so dukkham ce vedanāṁ vedeti, visamyutto naṁ vedeti, adukkhamasukhaṁ ce vedanāṁ vedeti, visamyutto naṁ vedeti. SN IV 209.
61 Ayaṁ vaccaṁ bhikkhave upāyāsaṁko visāññanta jātiya maraṇena sokehi paridevehi dukkhehi domanassasahā upāyāsaṁko visāññanta dukkhassamā u vaddantī. SN IV 210.
62 Samaññuto sampajāno sato buddhassa sāvako. SN IV 204.
The terms “fully understanding” (*sampajāno*) and “aware” (*sato*), are key terms in descriptions of one of the important soteriological practice described in the Nikāyas, the four establishing of mindfulness.

The second connection that this *sutta* has with soteriological practices occurs in the next lines. Here we find “*vedanā*” used as a substitute for “suffering” (*dukkha*) in what is otherwise a rehearsal of the four noble truths. In many places in the Nikāyas the Buddha is represented as summarising his teachings as the four noble truths. They are stated in what is traditionally regarded as his first discourse, known as the Dhammacakkapavattanasutta (V I 10 and SN V 420). In a passage which first appears in the second *sutta* of the Dīghaniṃkāya, the Sāmaññaphalaśutta, and which occurs subsequently in all of the remaining *suttas* of the first volume of the Dīghaniṃkāya and in fifteen *suttas* of the Majjhimanikāya, the realisation of the four noble truths is described as the highest goal of a bhikkhu’s practice. In this passage it is equated with complete liberation. The four noble truths are given in these *suttas* in the following terms:

He understands as it is “This is suffering”. He understands as it is “This is the arising of suffering”. He understands as it is “This is the cessation of suffering”. He understands as it is “This is the path leading to the cessation of suffering”.

In this first *sutta* of the Vedanāsamyutta we find a parallel to the four noble truths, with the word suffering (*dukkha*) replaced by the word *vedanā*. The student of the Buddha, who has full understanding (*sampajāna*) and is aware (*sato*),

understands *vedanā*, and the arising of *vedanā*, and where they cease, and the path leading to (their) destruction.

The next line of the *sutta* states that because of the ceasing of sensations, the bhikkhu is liberated.

---

63 So “*idam dukkhaṃ*” ti yathābhūtan paññātī, “*aayaṃ dukkhaṃ samudayo*” ti yathābhūtan paññātī, “*aayaṃ dukkhaṃ nirodho*” ti yathābhūtan paññātī, “*aayaṃ dukkhaṃ samudayaṃ paññātī*” ti yathābhūtan paññātī. DN I 83-84.

64 *Vedanā ca paññātī, vedanāsaṃca sambhavāṃ Yathā cetā nirujjhanti, magguṇca khayāmāṇaṃ.* SN IV 204.
This first *sutta* of the Vedanāsāmyutta is thus of fundamental importance for understanding the significance of *vedanā* in the soteriological process. *Vedanā* is placed here in the context of what is regularly presented in the Nikāyas as the Buddha's most important statement concerning suffering and the way out of suffering, that is the four noble truths.

Group of four suttas in second chapter of the Vedanāsāmyutta

Further into the Vedanāsāmyutta, in its second chapter, there is a group of four *suttas* which follow the same model as the first *sutta*, that is, they would each be a presentation of the four noble truths except that the term suffering is replaced by sensation. These *suttas* are all in prose, differing thus from the first *sutta*. The central passage of these four *suttas* is identical. Firstly, the following questions are asked:

What is *vedanā*? What is the arising of *vedanā*? What is the ceasing of *vedanā*?
What is the path leading to the ceasing of *vedanā*?66

Here we have a passage which follows the pattern in which the four noble truths are enunciated. In reply to the first question comes the following phrase:

There are these three *vedanā*, Ānanda: pleasant, painful and neutral *vedanā*.67

On one level, this may seem an unusual choice as a substitute for *dukkha*, especially the pleasant (*sukha*) *vedanā* and the *vedanā* which is neither painful nor pleasant (*adukkhamasukha*). This thought appears to have occurred to some of those listening to the Buddha's discourses, for there is a *sutta* in the Vedanāsāmyutta which deals with this question. Here a bhikkhu is represented as asking the Buddha how the Buddha's phrase

65 These are *suttas* number 15, 16, 17, and 18 (SN IV 219-23).
66 *Katamā nu kho bhante vedanā, katamo vedanāsamudayo, katamā vedanānirodho, katamā vedanānirodhagāminī paṭipada.* (SN IV 219-20)
67 *Tissa imā Ānanda vedanā, sukhā vedanā dukkhā vedanā adukkhumasukhā vedanā.* SN IV 220.
“whatever is felt is suffering” relates to the three vedanās, pleasant, painful and neither painful nor pleasant.

The bhikkhu’s noticing of the apparent discrepancy between the two teachings is praised by the Buddha. He then goes on to point out that all compounded things (saṅkhāras) are impermanent (anicca), subject to destruction (khayadhamma), decay (vayadhamma), fading away (virāgadhamma), ceasing (nirodhadhamma) and change (vippaṇāmadhamma), and that it is for this reason that he declared that everything that is felt is suffering. Thus we are allowed to conclude that vedanās which are pleasant and neutral also fall into this category of compounded things, and are also suffering. In this respect vedanās of all kinds are a suitable substitute for the first noble truth of suffering in this passage which follows the model of the four noble truths.

The answers to the next two questions, “What is the arising of vedanā?” and “What is the ceasing of vedanā?” is connected with the place of vedanā in the paticca-samuppāda. In the paticca-samuppāda, vedanā is said to exist because of contact (phassapaccayā vedanā). Here a similar locution is used for the explanation of the arising of vedanā.

From the arising of contact is the arising of vedanā.

The explanation of the ceasing of vedanā in these four suttas of the Vedanāsamyutta is identical to the description of the ceasing of vedanā in the reverse statement of the paticca-samuppāda. In both we find the phrase “From the ceasing of contact is the ceasing of vedanā” (phassanirodhā vedanānirodho SN IV 220).

The response to the fourth question, “What is the path leading to the ceasing of vedanā?” is exactly the same as the standard description of the fourth noble truth, the path leading to the ceasing of suffering: it is the noble eightfold path (ariya āṭṭhaṅgika magga). Thus in these four suttas of the Vedanāsamyutta the most important soteriological teachings of the Nikāyas are given in terms of vedanā.

---

⁴⁶ yanī kilici vedayitam tam dukkhassim SN IV 216, also found at MN III 208 and SN II 53, and cf. SN IV 205, lines 3-4. ⁴⁷ Phassasaṃudayā vedanāsaṃudayo. SN IV 220.
Group of three suttas in the third chapter of the Vedaññāyaṅutta

Further on again into the Vedaññāyaṅutta, in its third and final chapter, there is a group of three suttas (numbers 23, 24 and 25) which resemble the four that we have just looked at, except that in the middle of the presentation of the four "truths" of vedanā, the arising of vedanā, etc., there is a fifth element added. This comes after "the arising of vedanā" (vedanāsaṃuddaya), and is "the path leading to the arising of vedanā" (vedanāsaṃuddayagāmini patipādā). These three suttas have the same pattern as the four of the second chapter, in that they are in a question and answer structure. The reply to the question "What is the path leading to the arising of vedanā?" is given with one word: "craving" (tanha, SN IV 233). Tanha is of course a key term in the descriptions of soteriological practices that we find in the Nikayas. In the classical expositions of the four noble truths, in what is represented as the Buddha's first discourse, for example (SN V 421), or in the Mahāsatipatthānasutta (D II 308), craving is equated with the arising of suffering (Idam kho pana bhikkhave dukkhasamudayam ariyasaccam, yāyam tanha... SN V 241), and the complete cessation of craving is said to be the cessation of suffering (Idam kho pana bhikkhave dukkhanirodham ariyasaccam, yo tassā yeva tanhāya asesavirāganirodho... SN V 241).

The Pubbeññānasutta and the phrase "pubbe ananussutesu dhhammesu cakkhuḥ udapadi".

The statements concerning vedanā that are found in these suttas are emphasised in a significant manner in the second sutta of this group, the Pubbeññānasutta, the 24th sutta of the Vedaññāyaṅutta. The Buddha is represented as saying that before his enlightenment (pubbe me bhikkhave sambodhā), the questions that we find in the other suttas had occurred to him, that is, "What is vedanā?", etc. He then relates that the responses as given in the other suttas occurred to him. Finally, each of the elements of these passages are given in the following form:
At the thought, bhikkhus, “This is vedanā”, —in things not heard of before there arose in me vision, there arose in me knowledge, insight arose, wisdom arose, light arose.\(^{76}\)

Passages which are parallel to this one appear in a few other places in the Nikāyas. It seems that this locution is reserved for important utterances. It appears, for example, in the Buddha’s first discourse, with “This is vedanā”, etc., replaced by “This suffering”, etc. It also appears in a sutta of the Dighanikāya in which the Buddha is represented as relating an account of the life of a former Buddha by the name of Vipassin. In this sutta, the phrase comes after Vipassin’s discovery of the paticcasa-muṭṭhada, which is represented as the moment of his enlightenment. Here the passage begins, “At the thought “Arising, arising”...” (Samudayo samudayo ti... DN II 33). This sequence is repeated in seven suttas of the first chapter of the Nidānasamuchutta, which is the section of the Saññiyuttaniyakāya concerned with the paticcasa-muṭṭhada (suttas 4 to 10, SN II 5-10.) The first six of these suttas deals with the realisation of the paticcasa-muṭṭhada by six former Buddhas, and thus their enlightenment. After their realisation of each causal link in the paticcasa-muṭṭhada comes the passage found in the account of the Buddha Vipassin’s experience just mentioned. The seventh sutta uses the same terms to describe, in the first person, the experience of Gotama the Buddha.

This same passage appears in a short sutta of the Satipatthānasamuchutta of the Saññiyuttaniyakāya, introduced by each of the four establishings of mindfulness. Thus for the first we find “At the thought, bhikkhus, “This is the observation of the body with regard to the body”, —in things not heard of before there arose in me vision...” (Ayam kāye kāyānupassanā ti me bhikkhave pubbe ananussutesu dhammesu caakkhum udāpādi... SN V 178). The practices of the four establishings of mindfulness are, as we have seen, of great importance amongst the soteriological practices of the Nikāyas. This formula, then, seems to be used primarily in connection with realisations of great soteriological significance. Its use here in the 24th sutta of the Vedanāsamuchutta serves to underline the significance of the practice of knowing vedanā in the same way that suffering is known in the description of the four noble truths.

\(^{76}\) Imā vedanā ti me bhikkhave pubbe ananussutesu dhammesu caakkhum udāpādi, īśanaṁ upapādi, paññā udāpādi, vijjī udāpādi, āloko udāpādi. SN IV 233.
Aṅguttaranikāya sutta, AN I 176-77 ("Vediyamānassa ... idam dukkhaṁ taṁtha paññāpemi")

In all there are nine suttas in the Vedenāsamyutta which present vedanā in the same terms as suffering is presented in the four noble truths. There is another sutta of great interest on this topic in the Aṅguttaranikāya. The passage which is of interest to our enquiry begins with a statement of the first part of one of the standard presentations of the paticca-samuppāda formula found in the Nikāyas. At the term vedanā, however, it takes a turn which is different from its usual enunciation:

Conditioned by contact is vedanā. Now to him who has feeling, monks, I make known: This is suffering. I make known: This is the arising of suffering. I make known: This is the cessation of suffering. I make known: This is the practice that leads to the cessation of suffering.

This passage also links vedanā and the four noble truths, but in a manner which is quite different to the manner in which this is done in the suttas of the Vedenāsamyutta looked at above. After the statement of the cause of vedanā, instead of the next “link” in the paticca-samuppāda, “conditioned by vedanā is craving” (vedanāpaccayā taṁtha), we find a phrase which begins with the present participle of the verb vediyati, a verb which is related to vedanā.

This passage seems to be saying that the feeling of vedanā is a preliminary requirement for a person to be taught one of the key soteriological doctrines of the Nikāyas, that is the doctrine of the four noble truths.

Other contexts in which vedanā is presented in the four noble truths formula

Returning now to the presentations of vedanā in a manner akin to that in which suffering is presented in the four noble truths which we noticed in the Vedenāsamyutta, we must

71 Numbers 1, 15, 16, 17, 18, 23, 24, 25 and 28.
72 . . . phassapaccayā vedanā. Vediyamānassa kho panāham bhikkhave idam dukkhaṁ taṁtha paññāpemi, ayaṁ dukkhasamudayo taṁtha paññāpemi, ayaṁ dukkhanirodho taṁtha paññāpemi, ayaṁ dukkhanirodho paññāpemi, ayaṁ dukkhanirodho paññāpemi. AN I 176-77
note here that there are other contexts in which we find *vedanā* presented in this manner. In these contexts it finds its place alongside a number of items which are given in the same four-fold pattern. There are several *suttas* in the Nidānasamyutta in which this occurs.\textsuperscript{73} The other items in this case are the other members of the *paṭicca-samuppāda*, with the exception of avijjā.\textsuperscript{74} So in these *suttas*, *vedanā* is given no special emphasis. It takes its place alongside ten other members of the *paṭicca-samuppāda*, all of which are given in the pattern in which suffering is given in the exposition of the four noble truths. For example, we find "old-age-and-death" in the following presentation in *sutta* 13:

They know old-age-and-death, they know the arising of old-age-and-death, they know the cessation of old-age-and-death, they know the path leading to the cessation of old-age-and-death.\textsuperscript{75}

This then is repeated for the ten following members of the *paṭicca-samuppāda*, the final member, "ignorance" (*avijjā*), being omitted. In the Sammādiṭhisutta of the Majjhimanikāya, the same pattern with an added question and answer passage for each member ("What is old-age-and-death", etc., (*Katamaṃ pan'āvuso jārāmarāṇaṃ*, etc., MN I 49)), is found for all the members of the paṭicca-samuppāda, including *avijjā*, and with the term "food" (*āhāra*) added at the beginning.

Similarly, there are several *suttas* in the Khandhasamyutta of the Saṁyuttanikāya (suttas 50, 56, and 57), as well as two in other parts of the Saṁyuttanikāya (SN III 257-58 and SN IV 386-87), which present each of the five aggregates which make up a person (the *paṭicca-khandhā*) in the same four-fold pattern in which suffering is presented in the exposition of the four noble truths. *Vedanā* is one of these aggregates, along with matter (*rūpa*), perceptions (*saññā*), volitional activities (*saṅkhāra*) and consciousness (*viññāna*). So in these *suttas* as well, *vedanā* is not given any special emphasis which would distinguish it from the other aggregates.

---

\textsuperscript{73} *Suttas* 13, 14, 27, 28, 29, 30, 33, 65 and 82-93.

\textsuperscript{74} The Nidānasamyutta is made up of *suttas* on the theme of the *paṭicca-samuppāda*.

\textsuperscript{75} *jarāmarāṇaṃ pañjāṇanti*, *jarāmarāṇasamudayam pañjāṇanti*, *jarāmarāṇapati-paṭipadaṃ pañjāṇanti*, *jarāmarāṇapati-pati-padaṃ pañjāṇanti*. SN II 15
There is one sutta in the Aṅguttaranikāya in which the treatment of vedanā parallels that seen in the above passages:

And when the noble disciple thus knows vedanā, their origin, variety, fruit, ending, and the steps leading thereto: he knows this penetrative holy life as vedanā’s end.\textsuperscript{76}

Here we have the same pattern in which suffering is presented in the exposition of the four noble truths with two more items added: the noble disciple also knows the variety (vematattā) of vedanās and the result (vipāka) of vedanās. The soteriological significance of knowing all of these is underlined by the final phrase in which this practice is describe as being the “mode of living of Brahma” (brahmacariya). Elsewhere in the Canon, brahmacariya is described as being “for completely making an end of suffering” (sammā dukkhasa antakiriyāya Vin.i.12). The PED gives as part of its definition of this term the following phrase: “in Buddhist sense the moral life, holy life, religious life, as way to end suffering....”

The sutta in which this passage appears also has the same formula repeated for a number of other phenomena. These are sense pleasure (kāmā), perception (saññā), the āsavas (defilements), karma (Pali kamma), and suffering (dukkha) (A III 410-17). So as with the sutta looked at above in which we find a similar treatment of vedanā alongside other members of the pāṭicca-samuppāda and of the five aggregates, vedanā is not being emphasised in any special way here.

The significance of the treatment of vedanā is appreciated by the consideration of the wider context. The treatment of vedanā in the four-fold pattern that we find in the Vedāntaṁyutta does not occur for any of the other members of the pāṭicca-samuppāda, nor for any of the other aggregates. Nowhere in the Nikāyas are they treated in this manner in isolation from the other members. Vedanā is unique amongst these terms in

\textsuperscript{76} Yato ca kho bhikkhave ariyasāvako evaṃ vedanā pajānāti, evaṃ vedanānaṃ nidānasambhavaṃ pajānāti, evaṃ vedanānaṃ vematattāṃ pajānāti, evaṃ vedanānaṃ vipākaṃ pajānāti, evaṃ vedanānirodhaṃ pajānāti, evaṃ vedanānirodhāgāmati-paṭipadaṃ pajānāti, so imaṃ nibbodhiyakam brahmacariyam pajānāti vedanānirodham. AN III 412-13.
being presented on its own in the formulation that is associated with the four noble truths.

Conclusion

The passages studied in this chapter clearly give great emphasis to *vedanā* in their descriptions of soteriological processes. As far as I am aware, none of these passages have been grouped together and examined by those who have written on these texts. This survey shows that Goenka’s emphasis on *vedanā* in his meditation teachings have a firm basis in the texts of the Nikāyas.

When drawing conclusions from any study of passages in the Nikāyas, however, it is important to bear in mind the disparate nature of these texts. R. Gethin’s comments, quoted in the introduction to this thesis, are worth repeating here:

We are faced not so much with a single finished canvas as with a bewildering array of sketches and detailed studies which it is impossible to take in at once. Their subject is seen from different angles and in various aspects; it is viewed from near and afar.\(^7\)

There are of course many *suttas* in the Nikāyas which make no mention of the term *vedanā*. This is not to say, however, that these *suttas* contradict the hypothesis that the correct understanding of *vedanā* is an important element in the path to liberation. The following chapter pursues this theme further in an investigation of the term *vedanā* as it is used in certain important causal schemas found in these texts.

\(^{7}\) Gethin, 1992, p.20.
Chapter Two: Vedanā and the paṭicca-samuppāda

A number of modern writers on the Pali texts have made remarkable comments about the importance of the role of the term vedanā in the descriptions of various causal sequences in the Nikāyas. Thus D. Kalupahana in his study of causality in Buddhism:

... up to the point of feeling or sensation one is governed by the causal pattern. But immediately after that begins deliberate activity, which can lead one either to subjection to the objective order of things, that is, to enslavement to things of the world, or to freedom from bondage to such things through the elimination of ego-consciousness.¹

As noted in the introduction to this thesis, Nyanaponika has also given great emphasis to vedanā in this context. Here he translates vedanā as “Feeling”:

Through actual experience it can thus be confirmed that the ever-revolving round of Dependent Origination (paṭicca-samuppāda) can be stopped at the point of Feeling, and that there is no inherent necessity that Feeling is followed by Craving. Here we encounter Feeling as a key factor on the path of liberation ...²

Bhikkhu Bodhi also lays great stress on the crucial role of vedanā (again translated as “feeling”):

... a relationship of conditionality, unlike a necessitarian one, allows for a margin of freedom in responding to the condition. The place in the sequence of conditions where that margin takes on the greatest importance is the link between feeling and craving. It is at that brief moment when the present resultant phase has come to a culmination in feeling, but the present causal phase has not yet begun, that the issue of bondage and liberation is decided. If the response to feeling is governed by ignorance and craving, the round continues to revolve; if

the response replaces craving with restraint, mindfulness and methodical attention, a movement is made in the direction of cessation.\(^3\)

Having made these striking observations on the place of *vedanā* in certain causal sequences, it is surprising that none of these writers has looked in detail at the use of this term in such contexts in the Nikāyas. This chapter examines the use of the term *vedanā* in causal sequences such as the *paticcå-samuppåda* in the Nikāyas.

The *paticcå-samuppåda* is an important concept in the Nikāyas. In one of the *suttas* of the Majjhimanikåya it is equated with the *dhamma* (the teaching of the Buddha) itself:

*He who sees the *paticcå-samuppåda* sees the *dhamma*, he who sees the *dhamma* sees the *paticcå-samuppåda*.\(^4\)*

An obvious place to begin our investigations of the textual accounts of the *paticcå-samuppåda* is the Nidåna-saññyutta of the Saññyuttaniñåya. This important section of the canon groups together *suttas* which deal with the concept of “cause” (*nidåna*). The first *sutta*, in reply to the question “what is the *paticcå-samuppåda*?”, gives the following statement, without any elaboration:

...conditioned by ignorance are the karma-formations; conditioned by the karma-formations is consciousness; conditioned by consciousness is psycho-physicality; conditioned by psycho-physicality are the six (sensory) spheres; conditioned by the six (sensory) spheres is contact; conditioned by contact is *vedanå*, conditioned by *vedanå* is craving; conditioned by craving is grasping; conditioned by grasping is becoming; conditioned by becoming is birth; conditioned by birth, ageing and dying, grief, sorrow, suffering, lamentation and despair come into being. Such is the arising of this entire mass of suffering.\(^5\)

---


\(^4\) Yo *paticcå-samuppåda* pàsati so *dhamma* pàsati, yo *dhamma* pàsati so *paticcå-samuppåda* pàsati. MN I 191

This sequence of twelve “links” is found in this form in many *suttas* of all four Nikāyas. A wide variety of translations and interpretations have been applied to these terms. The term *sankhāra*, for instance, can be found in modern translations as any of the following: impressions, conformations, formations, disposition, aggregates, mental activities, volitional acts, composite-unity, pre-natal forces, co-operating forces, synthesis, karmic form-energy and affirmations⁴. As A.L. Basham has noted, this series has been “commented on again and again by ancient and modern scholars, and perhaps not fully understood by anybody”.⁵ I do not intend to provide a commentary on this series here. Rather I will attempt to elucidate the role of just one of the terms of the sequence, *vedanā*. This will of course entail some discussion of the terms in its immediate vicinity, and some comments on the series as a whole. I will also attempt to place the discussion found in the *suttas* on *vedanā* and the *paticca-samuppāda* in the broader context of the teachings of the Nikāyas. As R. Gethin has put it, “In their own terms, the Nikāyas teach but two things: *dukkha* [“suffering”] and the cessation of *dukkha*.” And he adds, significantly, that “in the Nikāyas the processes and means that bring about the cessation of *dukkha* are conceived of primarily in terms of spiritual practice and development.”⁶ With reference to the *paticca-samuppāda*, Gethin has some relevant comments upon which I will elaborate in this chapter: “... in Buddhist thought discussion of *paticca-samuppāda*... is not pursued as an end in itself but subordinated to the notion of the spiritual path...”⁷

An important aspect of the presentation of the *paticca-samuppāda* quoted above is that not one of the terms of the sequence is given more emphasis than any other term. There are many *suttas*, however, which highlight one term or another, and there are quite a number of *suttas* which throw light on the term *vedanā* and on its place in the series.

---

⁷ Ibid., p.19.
The Mahānidānasutta

When turning to the Dīghanikāya in our investigation of the paṭicca-samuppāda, the Mahānidānasutta (the Great Discourse on Causation) provides an obvious starting point. Rhys Davids, in the introduction to his historic 1910 translation of this sutta made the following comments:

The doctrine of paṭicca-samuppāda—that all dharmā (phenomena physical and mental) are paṭiccasamuppapannā (happen by way of cause) finds in the following Suttanta the fullest exposition accorded to it throughout the Piṭakas.10

This discourse is occasioned by some comments on the paṭicca-samuppāda by Ānanda, the Buddha’s attendant. Ānanda claims that the paṭicca-samuppāda appears clear to him, and the Buddha reprimands him for underestimating its significance before proceeding with his exposition. This response could well serve as a warning to any exegetist working on this series.

The sutta continues with the Buddha giving an outline of the series, first in the manner of a catechism, and then in the standard version which is used in the first sutta of the Nidāna-saṃyutta, quoted above. There is, however, an important difference: three of the twelve terms of the Nidāna-saṃyutta sequence are missing. They are avijjā, saśkhāra and saḷāyatana. These “omissions” do not, however, affect the place of the term vedanā in the sequence; the terms preceding and following vedanā remain the same. As in the first sutta of the Nidāna-saṃyutta, the first two presentations of the paṭicca-samuppāda series in this sutta do not lay emphasis on any particular term or terms of the series. All are presented in a uniform, undifferentiated manner.

The sutta continues with a third presentation of the paṭicca-samuppāda series in a third format. And on this occasion a strong emphasis is given to the vedanā link. This third presentation proceeds by giving a short explanation of each term in the series. The usual progression of terms is followed, beginning with jāti, up until vedanā. From vedanā, however, the description of the causal sequence turns back on itself to again describe the

relationship between taṇhā and vedanā. This now leads into a new sequence of causation. In the standard paticca-samuppāda series, the existence of upādāna is dependent on taṇhā. Instead, in this passage, the next phrase is “taṇham paticca pariyesanā” (“craving conditions seeking”), which in turn gives rise to the following series:

seeking conditions acquisition, acquisition conditions decision-making, decision-making conditions lustful desire, lustful desire conditions attachment, attachment conditions appropriation, appropriation conditions avarice, avarice conditions guarding of possessions, and because of guarding of possessions there arise the taking up of stick and sword, quarrels, disputes, arguments, strife, abuse, lying and other evil unskilled states.\(^{11}\)

The text then continues with a reiteration of the new series in reverse order, in an expanded formula which emphasizes the dependence of each element of the series upon the preceding element. Finally we come back to the term taṇhā. And at this point a statement is made concerning the importance of the role of vedanā in the scheme of these sequences. In Pali it reads as follows:

*Iti kho Ānanda ime dve dhammā dvayena vedanāya eka-samosaranā bhavanti.*\(^{12}\)

This phrase has presented some difficulties for translators over the years. T.W. Rhys Davids felt the need to include a few words in square brackets in his translation, in an attempt to make the meaning more clear.

“So, now, Ānanda, these two aspects [of craving] from being dual become united through the sensation [which conditions them].\(^{13}\)

Bhikkhu Bodhi, in his 1985 translation, offers a slightly different emphasis:

\(^{11}\) pariyesanam paticca lābhā, lābham paticca vinicchayo, vinicchayaṁ paticca chanda-rāgo, chanda-rāgam paticca ajjhosānam, ajjhosānam paticca pariggaho, pariggahāṁ paticca macchariyam, macchariyam paticca ‘rakkho, ‘rakkhādikaraṇu damplādāna-satthādāna-kahā-viggaḥa-vivāda-tuvaṇṭuva-pesāna-musāvāda anekā pāpakā akusātā dhammā sambhavanti. DN II 58-59

\(^{12}\) DN II 61

Therefore, Ānanda, these two phenomena, being a duality, converge into a unity in feeling.\textsuperscript{14}

The phrase "vedanāya eka-samosarāṇā" puts strong emphasis on the term vedanā. The term samosarāṇa is a rather uncommon one. The Pali Text Society’s Pali-English Dictionary notes that it means “coming together, meeting, union, junction”. A.K. Warder, in his Introduction to Pali, recommends that in order to elucidate key terms, the student should work “if possible from concrete everyday language... to the less obvious dialogues of the philosophers.”\textsuperscript{15} In a Saṃyuttaniyāya sutta we find a passage where this term is used in just such an everyday context.

Just as, brethren, in a peaked house all rafters whatsoever go together to the peak, slope to the peak, join [samosarāṇa] in the peak, and of them all the peak holds chief place.\textsuperscript{16}

This vivid image gives an impression of the emphasis being placed on the term vedanā. Vedanā links the two sequences which are the subject of this section of the sutta. By viewing the two sequences side by side (fig. 1), we can see that both taphā and vedanā, amongst other terms, are common to them. And yet the above statement identifies vedanā as the point where the two come together. This pointed emphasis on vedanā will be more fully appreciated when we come to look at suttas which explore this junction in more detail. The current text, at this point, returns to its exposition of the standard paticca-samuppāda series.

\textsuperscript{16} Seyyathā pi bhikkhave kāṣāyānassa yā kāci gopānaśīyo sabbā tā kāṣāyānā kāṣāyānī kāṣāsamosarāṇa kāṣāyānī tāsan ayyan akkhāyati. SN III 156.
Fig. 1

Mahānidānasutta:

1\textsuperscript{st} sequence

consciousness (viññāṇa)  
name-and-form (nāma-rūpa)  
contact (phassa)  
vedana

2\textsuperscript{nd} sequence

consciousness (viññāṇa)  
name-and-form (nāma-rūpa)  
contact (phassa)  
vedana

craving (tanha)  
grasping (upādāna)  
becoming (bhava)  
birth (jāti)  
old-age and death, etc. (jarā-marāṇa...)  
lustful desire (chanda-rāgo)  
attachment (ajjhosāna)  
appropriation (pariggaha)  
avarice (macchariya)  
guarding of possessions (ārakkha)  
taking up of stick and sword, etc. (dappādāna-satthādāna ...)  

Following this exposition, the remainder of the sutta is not directly concerned with the paticca-samuppāda, but one term from the series is given some further attention in a long passage which discusses various “soul theories”; this is our term vedana. This part of the sutta has been examined in detail in the first chapter of this thesis.

The Brahmajālasutta

The Dīghanikāya is counted as the first book amongst the collections of suttas of the Pali canon. Its first sutta, the Brahmajālasutta, lays strong emphasis on vedana and discusses
it in relation to the *paticca-samuppāda*. The main body of the *sutta* is an exposition of sixty-two of the views or philosophies (*diṭṭhīs*) which were prevalent in the Buddha’s day, and their relationship to the Buddha’s realization. Following this detailed exposition, which occupies some twenty-six pages in the Pali Text Society edition, a section which the editors of that edition have headed as the “Summary”18. Each of the sixty-two views are here stated three times, grouped in their various categories (or rather the holders of these views are listed as proclaiming their views), qualified in a different way each time. Finally, all of these view-holders are listed in relation to the *paticca-samuppāda*, which is here stated for the first time, in a shortened version. Thus, the sixty-two *diṭṭhī* are presented in five “rounds”: firstly with their particulars detailed, and then three times in the “summary” and finally with reference to the *paticca-samuppāda*. The first four rounds, in fact, bring us closer and closer to the final presentation, and what we see here is a kind of evolution of the *paticca-samuppāda*.

The relationship of the various views to the Buddha’s realization in the first round is expressed in the following terms:

This, bhikkhus, the Tathāgata understands: These viewpoints thus grasped and adhered to will lead to such-and-such destinations in another world. This the Tathāgata knows, and more, but he is not attached to that knowledge. And being thus unattached he has experienced for himself perfect peace, and having understood as they really are the arising and passing away of *vedanā*, their attraction and danger and the escape from them, the Tathāgata is liberated without remainder.19

This passage appears in identical form thirteen times, as a foil to the various and manifold doctrines. In the previous chapter we noted the important role that *vedanā* plays in this passage.

---

17 DN I 13-38.
16 DN I 39-45.
19 *Tavidaṃ bhikkhave Tathāgato pañāhī: “Ime diṭṭhīṭṭhānā evam-gaḥtā evam-parāmatthā evam-gaṭṭhā bhavissantu evam-abhissamparāyā ti.” Taṭa ca Tathāgato pañāhī, tato ca uttarataraṃ pañāhī, taṭa ca pañāhīnaṃ nā parāmatthā, aparāmattho c’assa pacchatam yeva nibbati vidhitā, vedanānaṃ samudayaṃ ca atthagame ca assa dāna ca nissaro ca yathā-bhūtāṃ viditva anupādā vimutto, bhikkhave, Tathāgato. DN I 16-17.
The repeated passage of the second round presents some problems of translation and interpretation (Maurice Walshe comments that the difficulty of translating Pali is sometimes considerable, “even when one thinks one knows the meaning!”20):

Tatra, bhikkhave, ye te samaṇa-brāhmaṇā sassata-vādā sassatam attānaṁ ca lokaṁ ca paññāpentī catuhi vatthūhi, tad api tesaṁ bhavatam samaṇa-brāhmaṇānaṁ ajānatam apassataṁ vedayitaṁ tathā-gatānaṁ paritasīta-vippanditam eva.21

This passage is repeated thirteen times, each time in relation to a different group of samaṇa-brāhmaṇas and their respective diṭhis.

T.W. Rhys Davids and Walshe offer slightly different interpretations through their translations. Rhys Davids, whose translation of the Dīghanikāya was the work of a pioneer, proposes the following:

Of these, brethren, those recluses and Brahmans who are Eternalists, who in four ways maintain that the soul and the world are eternal... that opinion of theirs is based only on the personal sensations, on the worry and writhing consequent thereon, of those venerable recluses and Brahmans, who know not, neither perceive, and are subject to all kinds of craving.22

Walshe gives:

Thus, monks, when those ascetics and Brahmans who are Eternalists proclaim the eternity of the self and the world in four ways, that is merely the feeling of those who do not know and see, the worry and vacillation of those immersed in craving.23

The key word in the current context is vedayitaṁ, and the key issue is whether or not it can be equated with the term vedanā of the patīcca-samuppāda. Its role in the sentence

---

20 Ibid. p. 534.
21 DN I 39
also needs to be considered, and through this consideration I find myself at variance with both of the above renderings. The PED gives *vedayita* as the past participle of the verb *vedati*, which is explained in a separate entry as having a twofold meaning:

either intellectually “to know” (cp. *veda*), or with reference to general feeling “to experience” (cp. *vedanā*). For the present tense two bases are to be distinguished, viz. *ved*, used in both meanings; and *vediy* ... used only in meaning of “experience”. 24

*Vedayita* is closely related to the second form, and thus to the second part of the twofold meaning, which this dictionary compares to the *paṭicca-samuppāda* term *vedanā*.

Childers’ *Dictionary of the Pali Language*, 25 an older work but one still held in high repute (first published in 1875; “old but still important”, comments Warder26) approaches this term from a different angle, but reaches a similar conclusion. Under the definition of *vidati*, which is given as “to know, to ascertain”, we read that “there is a curious form “*vediyati*”, often contracted to *vedati*, which is used in the sense “to feel, experience”.” And further on: “from “vediyati” we have the participle of the perfect passive, neut. “*vedayitaṃ*”, sensation, feeling.” The PED gives in its entry for “*vedayita*” only its meaning as an adjective, but here we find it as a noun. In Pali, as Warder has pointed out, “the distinction between “substantives” and “adjectives” is not absolute, a good many words being used in both functions”. 27 He gives *vedayita* as a neuter noun meaning “sensation, experience” in the vocabulary of this book.

It is as a noun that we can find similarity between this word and the *vedanā* link of the *paṭicca-samuppāda*. Rhys Davids, one of the editors of the PED, gives in his translation of the passage under examination, the adjectival meaning of *vedayitāp*, which he renders as “based... on the personal sensations”. Walshe has it as the noun, which seems to be clearer in the context of the sentence: surely it relates directly, as an accusative noun, to the preceding nouns in the genitive. These *samaṇa-brāhmanas* are being described as

---

26 *Introduction to Pali*, p.383.
“ajānatāṃ apassatāṃ” (not knowing, not seeing) of “vedayitaṃ”, in contrast to the Tathāgata who has properly understood (“yathābhūtaṃ viditvā”) the characteristics of vedanā, as described in the previous round.

The final nominative in this sentence is the compound “paritasita-vipphanditaṃ” (Rhy David’s “worry and writhing”), and this relates to the immediately preceding compound noun in the genitive (“taṇhā-gatānaṃ”). This genitive is an attribute of the genitive “sañña-brāhmaṇānaṃ” found earlier in the sentence. As a rule attributes immediately follow the word to which they relate, but here we find the nominative vedayitaṃ between the main group of genitive nouns and this one. In Pali, according to Warder, “departures from the usual word order in prose indicates emphasis, strong emotion”.24 Thus we find the term taṇhā (“craving”) thrown into relief, and it is this term, central to the Buddha’s exposition of his realization in innumerable suttas, which follows the term vedanā in the paticca-samuppāda series.

Maurice Walshe’s translation of this phrase seems to be gaining more credibility as we proceed. There is, however, one important aspect in which I feel it is lacking, and where Rhys Davids seems to come closer to what the real meaning may be. Walshe gives equal weight to the two words not in the genitive in this phrase (vedayitaṃ and paritasita-vipphanditaṃ):

“that is merely the feeling of those..., the worry and vacillation of those...”

Yet it seems that they perform quite different roles in the sentence. Vedayitaṃ is grammatically subordinate to the two present participles which qualify sañña-brāhmaṇānaṃ, namely ajānatāṃ apassatāṃ. “What is felt” is what they do not know or see. On the other hand, the nominative paritasita-vipphanditaṃ relates to the whole clause, with an idiomatic relationship to the nouns in the genitive. Warder explains this idiom thus:

A construction with a possessive genitive is very often equivalent to an English construction with the verb “to have”. (In Pali “to have” is hardly ever expressed

---

by a verb but almost always by the genitive case.)... idam assa hoti, literally "of him there is this", "he has this".\textsuperscript{29}

So the two words \textit{vedayitam} and \textit{paritasita-vipphanditam} are in a definite sequence, together with the intervening compound in the genitive (\textit{tanha-gatina}). If we equate the phrase \textit{paritasita-vipphanditam} ("worry and vacillation") with \textit{domanassa} ("distress... mental pain... unpleasant state of mind" (PED)), which appears as one of the defining terms for \textit{dukkha} ("suffering") in the \textit{paticca-samuppada}, then we have the kernal of the \textit{paticca-samuppada} expressed in this round of explanation of the invalidity of the sixty-two \textit{diṭṭhīs}. The \textit{samaṇa-brāhmaṇas}, not knowing, not seeing \textit{vedanā}, involved in craving (\textit{tanha-gatī}), acquire this suffering. What we see here then, is an adumbration of the significant central section of the \textit{paticca-samuppāda}: \textit{vedanā}—craving (\textit{tanha})—suffering (\textit{dukkha}).

The third "round" is presented with a similar summarized version of the sixty-two views presented in groups, each of which is qualified in the same terms. This time we find the phrase "\textit{tad api phassa-paccaya}" at the end of each group of views, which Walshe gives as "that is conditioned by contact". This is the first usage in this \textit{sutta} of the term "\textit{paccaya}" ("condition" or "cause"), the term which connects the "links" in the standard presentation of the \textit{paticca-samuppada}. Both here and in the standard version of the \textit{paticca-samuppada} the term \textit{paccaya} is declined in the ablative case, indicating cause, a usage common in philosophical statements.\textsuperscript{30}

This term is compounded with the word \textit{phassa} (contact). The significance of the term here is its place in the \textit{paticca-samuppāda}, immediately preceding the term \textit{vedanā}, which has been the basis of the elaborations of the first two rounds. So we take one step back in the \textit{paticca-samuppāda} after the foreshadowing of the forward part of the chain in the preceding round. We are witnessing a kind of working out of the \textit{paticca-samuppāda}, an evolutionary process that we do not see in the many standard presentations of the \textit{paticca-samuppāda} given in the Nikāyas.

\textsuperscript{29} \textit{Ibid.}, p. 56.

\textsuperscript{30} Warder, 1984, p. 89.
In the fourth round the wording becomes more emphatic. This categorical statement follows each of the groups of *ditthās* which are arranged in the same way as they are in the previous two rounds:

... *te vata aṇāatra phassā patisambodissatī ti n’etam thānam vijjati.*

For this Walshe gives:

That all of these (Eternalists and the rest) should experience that feeling without contact is impossible.

And Rhys Davids in a similar vein:

That they should experience those sensations without contact, such a condition of things could not be.

Both of them capture the emphatic nature of the idiom “*n’etam thānam vijjati*” (“this is impossible”, “it is not the case”). More significantly, both of them use a similar choice of words to express the verb *patisambodissanti*. The root of this verb (*pati-sam-vid*) is defined by Warder as meaning “feel, experience”, and the PED uses the same words in its entry for *patisamvedeti* (as well as “undergo” and “perceive”). Yet both of our translators choose to use a verb and an object to render this verb: “experience that feeling” (Walshe) and “experience those sensations” (Rhys Davids). “Feeling” and “sensation” are two words that both of them commonly use to translate the Pali term *vedanā*. This term can be construed as being related to the root *vid* of the verb in question. Rhys Davids and Walshe have both chosen to extrapolate the noun *vedanā* from the verb *pati-sam-vid*, and in doing so they have connected this passage with the *paticca-samuppāda*, of which *vedanā* is one of the key terms.

Each of the successive rounds of the Brahmajālasutta moves closer and closer to the final form of the *paticca-samuppāda*. The emphatic

---

31 DN 143.
... te vatta aññatra phassā pāṭisamvedissانتī n'etam thānaṃ vijjati

of this round can be read in this light as adumbrating the phassa-paccayā vedanā link of the paticca-samuppāda. Moreover, this phrase implies that there can be no vedanā without phassa. This looks forward to the further elaboration of the paticca-samuppāda, not found in this sutta, in which it is stated that

phassa-nirodhā vedanā-nirodho.\(34\)

That is “with the cessation of contact, sensations cease”.

The fifth and final round is much shorter than any of the preceding ones. All of the theorisers are listed in one sentence which ends with the following phrase in Walshe’s translation:

...they experience these feelings (pāṭisamvedenti) by repeated contact through the six sense-bases; feeling conditions craving; craving conditions clinging; clinging conditions becoming; becoming conditions birth; birth conditions ageing and death, sorrow, lamentation, sadness and distress.\(35\)

Rhys Davids and Walshe again translate pāṭisamvedenti with verb and object. Walshe continues with his “experience these feelings”. They are somewhat vindicated by the phrase which immediately follows this verb (“tesaṃ vedanā-paccayā taṭhā”), which Rhys Davids translates in an accurate, literal manner, which reads however rather clumsily: “To them on account of the sensations arises craving ...” The verb pāṭi-sam-vid is thus directly linked with the term vedanā, of which the word “sensations” is a translation. And from there the rest of the paticca-samuppāda unfolds, as found verbatim in many other passages of the Pali canon.

---

\(34\) Found, amongst many other places, at DN II 35.

\(35\) ... sabbe te chaṭṭha phassāyatahe phusa phussa pāṭisamvedenti, tesaṃ vedanā-paccayā taṭhā, taṭhā-paccayā upāḍāya, upāḍāna-paccayā bhavo, bhava-paccayā jāti-paccayā jāra-marutā soka-parideva-dukkha-domānas’tupāyaśi sambhavanti. DN I 45.
The phrase preceding the term *patisaṃvedenti* is also of much interest in our study of the evolution of the *paticca-samuppāda* in this *sutta*.

... *chahi phassa* *avatanaḥ phussa phussa* *patisaṃvedenti*...

It is the compound *phassāvatanaḥ* which commands our attention. The *phassa* is the same “contact” which played such an important role in the previous two rounds. *Āyatana* is a new term for this *sutta* and is found immediately preceding *phassa* in the standard setting of the *paticca-samuppāda* as *salāyatana*. *Saḷḍaḥ* is a variant form of the word *cha*, which we find here in the Brahmajālasutta in the instrumental case, meaning “six”. The word *āyatana* literally means “sphere” or “region”, and the six *āyatana* refer to the six spheres of perception, that is the five physical senses and the mind, and their corresponding objects: eye and visual objects; ear and sound; nose and odour; tongue and taste; body and touch; and mind and objects of the mind, that is thoughts of all kind. The compound is related to the verb *patisaṃvedenti* by the use of an instrumental case ending (*phassāvatanaḥ*). Thus we see foreshadowing of the section of the *paticca-samuppāda* which precedes the term *vedanā*, *salāyatana*—*phassa*—*vedanā*.

We see in this passage an exposition of the *paticca-samuppāda* in a manner quite unlike the standard formula which we find in so many *suttas*. The usual setting is to indicate *avijjā* (ignorance) as the base of the “this entire mass of suffering” (*etassa kevalassa dukkhaṃ* *katthā* *samsāravivekam*), and then upwards through *sankhāra*, *viññāṇa*, *nāmarūpa*, *salāyatana*, *phassa*, *vedanā*, and from there onwards as we find it in this passage of the Brahmajālasutta. Instead we find that the furthest back that the workings of dependent origination are expounded is some kind of combination of *phassa* and *salāyatana*. The effect of this is to highlight the *vedanā* link of the *paticca-samuppāda*.

“*phussa phussa patisaṃvedenti*”, repeatedly or continuously experiencing *vedanā*, which results in *rāga* (craving) and ultimately in *dukkha*. This emphasis on *vedanā* in the last round harks back to the first round, in which the Buddha’s enlightenment is described in terms of his understanding of the characteristics of *vedanā*.

---

36 For example, in the first fifteen *sutta* of the second volume of the *Samyutta-nikaya*.
The entire *sutta* is a kind of lead-up to this “first, partial, exposition of dependent origination (*paticca-samuppāda*) in the Canon”\(^{37}\), in which we see various elements of it in embryonic form. And, as we have seen, a great deal of emphasis is given to *vedana* and to terms related to it (*vedayita* and *patisamvedeti*) in the description of this process.

The Mahātavāsankhayasutta

The *paticca-samuppāda* forms the subject matter of a number of *sutras* of the Majjhimanikāya. One of the most interesting of these is the well-known Mahātavāsankhayasutta (the Great Discourse on the Destruction of Craving). In the first portions of the *sutta*, we find several statements of the standard, twelve-member *paticca-samuppāda* formula, in which each link is presented in an undifferentiated manner, no one member being emphasised more than another. The later part of the *sutta*, which places great emphasis on the term *vedana* in its description of a soteriological practice, has been examined in the first chapter of this thesis. The following passage is the point at which the description of a certain way of reacting to *vedana* leads into the cycle of suffering that is the *paticca-samuppāda*:

...whatever *vedana* he feels—pleasant or painful or neither painful nor pleasant—he delights in that sensation, welcomes it and persists in cleaving to it. ... From delighting in that *vedana*, from welcoming it, from persisting in cleaving to it, delight (*nandi*) arises; whatever is delight amid those *vedana*, that is grasping; conditioned by grasping is becoming; conditioned by becoming is birth; conditioned by birth, old age and dying, grief, sorrow, suffering, lamentation and despair come into being. Such is the arising of this entire mass of suffering.\(^{38}\)

The terminology is exactly the same as that used in the standard exposition of the *paticca-samuppāda*, except that in place of “craving” (*tanha*) we here find the term *nandi*, “joy, enjoyment, pleasure, delight” (PED).

---

\(^{37}\) Walshe, op. cit., p. 543, note 88.

\(^{38}\) *yam kañci vedanañci vedeti, sukhañci vā dukkhañci vā adukkhanañci sukhañci vā, so taññ vedanañci abhinandati abhivadati ajjhosañci tiññhati ... Tassa taññ vedanañci abhinandato abhivadato ajjhosañci tiññhato uppaññato nandi, yā vedanañci nandi tād-uppaññam, tass' uppaññapaccayā bhavo, bhavapaccayā jāti, jātapaccayā jarāmaranāna ukkhandhado jātikaraniyā sambhavanti, evam-etassa kevalassa dukkhañci upakuladdhassa samudayo hoti. MN I 266-7*
The statement of the contrary state of affairs, when "mindfulness of the body" (kāya-sati) is in place (upāṭṭhita), places similar emphasis on vedanā. The person described no longer delights in vedanā; the delight (nandi) in vedanā ceases:

\[ \text{yā vedanāsu nandi sā nirujjhati...} \]

And from this point the reverse sequence of the paticca-samuppāda is given, ending with the usual formula "Thus this entire mass of suffering ceases."\[41\]

The centrality of vedanā to this process has been commented upon by Bhikkhu Bodhi. At the phrase "he does not delight in that vedanā,"\[42\] he notes in his translation, that "[t]his statement reveals that the chain of dependent origination is broken at the link between feeling and craving. ... if one does not delight in feeling, craving will not have the opportunity to arise and set off reactions of like and dislike that provide further fuel for the round, and thus the round will come to an end."\[43\]

The point of departure for the Mahāpaññāsakanhayasutta is the opinion of a certain bhikkhu named Sāti on the nature of viññāna ("consciousness") and the Buddha's rebuttal of this opinion. David Kalupahanā has summarized this part of the sutta in the following manner:

This discourse contains the famous "Sāti's heresy", namely, the assumption that, to explain the possible continuity of human life after death, there ought to be a mysterious psychic agent that remains unchanged. The Buddha's application of the principle of dependent arising (paticca-samuppāda) to account for any form of continuity is highlighted.\[44\]

---

39 so tan vedanaṁ nābhinandatī MN I 270
40 MN I 270
41 evam etassa kevalassa dukkhhakkhandhassa nirodho hoti. MN I 270
42 so tan vedanaṁ nābhinandatī MN I 270
43 MLDB, pp.1232-3, note 414
The Buddha states that *viññāṇa* is "generated by conditions" (*paṭiccasamuppādana*). He further indicates that there are six types of *viññāṇa*, each of which is conditioned by one of the six senses (*manas*, the mind, is counted as one of these) and the object with which it comes in contact. Thus for visual consciousness:

If consciousness arises because of the eye and material shapes, it is known as visual consciousness.45

The Nidāna-samyutta, *sutta* 43, SN II 72

The first part of this account of the nature of the different kinds of *viññāṇa* plays an important role in a number of *suttas* which deal with parts of the *paṭicca-samuppāda* and in which *vedanā* is highlighted as an important link in the causal sequence. The 43rd *sutta* of the Nidāna-samyutta displays this sequence in its most basic form. First comes the description of consciousness that we encountered in the Mahātānāsankhayasutta:

Visual consciousness arises because of eye and material shapes...46

The union of these three is described as "contact" (*phassa*).47 In the standard formulation of the *paṭicca-samuppāda*, "contact" leads to *vedanā*. Here also we find the usual phrase describing this connection:

from the condition of contact is *vedanā*.48

After this comes a statement of the next link, with the usual phrasing:

from the condition of *vedanā* is craving.49
Here, though, the sequence is broken off. Instead of the four terms which usually follow “craving” (tanhā) (upādāna, etc.) the passage ends abruptly with a short concluding phrase:

This, bhikkhus, is the arising of suffering.\(^{50}\)

The same sequence is then repeated for the five remaining sense faculties.

This brief description of the arising of suffering (dukkha) is of great significance in understanding the place of vedanā in the scheme of things in these texts. The arising of dukkha is equated here with the central crux of the paticca-samuppāda. The paticca-samuppāda is in fact reduced to three elements: phassa, vedanā, and tanhā. The arising of the first of these comes about in an involuntary manner. The meeting of eye, material shape and visual consciousness is a mechanical process over which the individual does not have any control. To appreciate the full significance of the remaining two elements, we have to turn to the second section of the suttā, in which the Buddha teaches, as he announces in the first lines of the suttā, the disappearance (atthaṅgama) of dukkha.

The “atthaṅgama” section begins in an identical manner to the first section on the arising (samudaya) of dukkha. After the phrase “from the condition of vedanā is craving” (vedanāpaccayā tanhā), however, we find the following:

From the complete cessation of craving comes the cessation of grasping...\(^{51}\)

This leads into the so-called paṭiloma (reverse order) statement of the remainder of the paticca-samuppāda, in which the cessation (nīrodha) of one member of the sequence is said to be the cause of the cessation of the next. This culminates in the cessation of dukkha, its disappearance (atthaṅgamo). The turning point is thus tanhā, which is dependent on vedanā. This re-formulation of the paticca-samuppāda, to include elements from the usual anuloma (“forward order”) exposition as well as the paṭiloma exposition in one sequence, is quite striking. A phrase very similar to that which usually begins the

\(^{50}\) Ayaṃ kho bhikkhave dukkhassa samudayo. SN II 72

\(^{51}\) Tassāyeva tanhāya asessavirāganīrodhā upādānaṇirodho... SN II 72
patiloma version—Avijjāya tveva asesavirāganirodāḥ (“from the complete cessation of ignorance...”)—is here found in the middle of the causal sequence, with the word “craving” (taṇhā) substituted for “ignorance” (avijjā). So the process which is described as leading to suffering in the first half of the sutta does not necessarily lead to suffering, for the same process also begins the sequence found in the second half. The key to the stopping of one process and the starting of the other must therefore be found amongst those terms which constitute the “turning point”:

from the condition of vedanā is craving; from the complete cessation of craving comes ...

We will look again at this Nidānasamāyutta sutta in the next section of this chapter, which takes as its point of departure two causal sequences described in the Chachakkasutta of the Majjhimanikāya.

The Chachakkasutta.

Throughout the Nikāyas we find the paṭicca-samuppāda presented as a kind of list, in which no one member is given any more emphasis than any other. There are, however, many suttas where some members of this sequence appear in contexts which highlight certain features of the sequence. The Chachakkasutta of the Majjhimanikāya is one such sutta. We have already noticed in the previous chapter that this sutta gives emphasis to vedanā in a description of a soteriological process. There are two features which indicate that this sutta is to be regarded as especially important. The Buddha is represented as speaking the following phrase in the opening lines:

Bhikkhus, I shall teach you the Dhamma that is good in the beginning, good in the middle, and good in the end, with the right meaning and phrasing; I shall reveal a holy life that is utterly perfect and pure, that is, the six sets of six.

52 vedanāpaccayā taṇhā, tassāyeva taṇhāya asesavirāganirodāḥ... SN II 72
53 Dhamman'to, bhikkhave, desissamā ādikalyāṇam majhe kalyāṇamu, pariyosānamu kalyāṇamu sātthaṃ sabhayajjanaṃ kevaḷaparipuṇaṃ pariṣuddhaṃ brahma-cariyaṃ pukāsāsani, yaddaṃ cha chakkāṇi. MN III 280
The description of the Dhamma (the Buddha’s teaching) and the “holy life” (brahmacariya) that occurs in this passage is found in many places in the suttas. It is, however, only here that it introduces one of the Buddha’s discourses. Here it is, in fact, identified with the discourse.

The closing lines of this sutta also indicate that it is of special importance. It is related there that while this discourse was being spoken, the minds of sixty bhikkhus became liberated from the āsavas (defilements). There are only a few other suttas in the Nikāyas which end with formulas which are similar to this. Amongst them are those suttas which are considered by the tradition to be the second and third discourses of the Buddha.

There are two important passages in the Chachakkasutta which are related to the place of vedanā in the paticca-samuppāda and which recur in many other suttas in the Nikāyas. The first of these includes three of the elements which occur sequentially in the middle part of the paticca-samuppāda. They are contact (phassa), vedanā, and craving (tanha).

The following passage introduces this section of the discourse:

The six internal bases should be understood. The six external bases should be understood. The six classes of consciousness should be understood. The six classes of contact should be understood. The six classes of vedanā should be understood. The six classes of craving should be understood.

These six groups of six, the chachakka of the title of the sutta, are then explained in more detail. The six internal bases are explained as the five senses and the mind. The six external bases are the objects of these senses, that is, forms, sounds, odours, etc., and objects of the mind. The six types of consciousness are those that arise when each of the senses comes in contact with its respective external object, and when the mind comes in contact with a thought. Each of these types of consciousness is said to be dependent (paticca) upon the sense organ and its object. The six types of contact are said to be the

54 imasmim kho pana veyyākaraṇasmim bhāñāmāne satthimatttānaṁ bhikkhūnaṁ anupādīya āsavēhi citāni vinuccippesa MN III 287
55 SN III 68 and SN IV 20
56 Cha aıyattakāni āyatanaṁ veditabbaṁ, cha bāhiriṇi āyatanaṁ veditabbaṁ, cha viṁsāpanāyā veditabba, cha phassaṁ veditabba, cha vedanākāyā veditabba, cha tanhākāyā veditabba. MN III 280
meeting (sangati) of each of the sense organs, their respective object, and the resultant consciousness. From each of these six types of contact result the six types of vedanā. And from each of these six types of vedanā comes the six types of craving. When this “sixth six” is described, we have the whole sequence:

Dependent on eye and forms, eye-consciousness arises; the meeting of the three is contact; with contact as condition there is vedanā, with vedanā as condition there is craving.\(^{57}\)

This passage is repeated for each of the remaining four senses and their objects, and for the mind and mental objects. It is clear that this passage focuses on the central portion of the paticca-samuppāda; the position of vedanā, immediately preceding craving, is thus highlighted.

This passage appears imbedded in three suttas of the Nidānasamñyutta, and these same three suttas are found again, repeated without any change, in the Saḷāyatanasamñyutta. Before we examine these suttas in detail, let us note that the fact that they appear in the Nidānasamñyutta makes it clear that this passage is related to the paticca-samuppāda sequence, for the Nidānasamñyutta is made up of suttas which have as their subject the paticca-samuppāda.

Suttas 43, 44 and 45 of the Nidānasamñyutta\(^{58}\) are the same, respectively, as suttas 106, 107 and 113 of the Saḷāyatanasamñyutta,\(^{59}\) and all of them contain the causal sequence found in the Chachakkasutta which is quoted above. The first sutta in each group has the title “Suffering” (Dukkha), and in it the Chachakkasutta sequence, repeated for each of the five sense doors and for the mind, is followed by the brief phrase “This, bhikkhus, is the arising of suffering.”\(^{60}\) The first noble truth is, of course, expressed by the single word dukkha (“suffering”), and it is the escape from this suffering which is the goal of the Buddha’s teaching. Understanding the nature of suffering is essential for this task, so the description found in this sutta, in only a few words, of the human predicament, is of

\(^{57}\) Cakkhuṁ ca paticca rūpe ca uppajjati cakkhuvihārasīhaṁ, tiṇṇaṁ sangati phasso, phassa-paccayaṁ vedanā, vedanā-paccayā taṁ phāsā. MN III 282

\(^{58}\) SN II 71-75

\(^{59}\) SN IV 86-88, 90-91

\(^{60}\) Ayaṁ kho bhikkhave dukkhassa samudayo, SN II72 = SN IV 86
great interest. The process which we first saw described in the Chachakkasutta is here thrown into sharp relief, and within this process, vedanā plays a key role.

The second half of the sutta describes the “disappearance of suffering” (dukkhassa atthagamo). In this section the sequence as quoted above from the Chachakkasutta is again found, but after the term “craving” (taṇhā), it is stated that there is the cessation (niruddha) of craving, and this leads into a statement of the cessation version of the paticca-samuttāda (as found at SN II 1-2 and at many other places in the Nikāyas), from the term taṇhā onwards.

The second sutta in this group of three, in both the Nidānasamyutta and the Salāyatanasamyutta, is called “the World” (Loka), and it begins with a statement by the Buddha that he will teach the arising (samudaya) and the disappearance (atthagama) of the world. The first part of the sutta, which describes the arising of the world, begins with the passage quoted above from the Chachakkasutta, but after the term “craving” (taṇhā), it proceeds to the phrase “with craving as condition there is clinging” (taṇhāpaccayā upādānaṃ) and follows on with the remainder of the paticca-samuttāda in its usual form. The second half of the sutta is identical to the second half of the previous sutta. We thus find here a more thorough combination of the sequence from the Chachakkasutta and the paticca-samuttāda.

In the Nidānasamyutta, the third sutta in this group follows on immediately from the previous two, but in the Salāyatanasamyutta four other suttas intervene between the second and the third suttas of this group. The two suttas also have different titles in the different collections: in the Nidānasamyutta it is called, after the name of the place where it was delivered, Ñātika; in the Salāyatanasamyutta it is called “Listening” (upassuti), for reasons which will become clear. Otherwise, these two suttas are identical. The central part of these suttas is identical to the second sutta of each group, “The World”. It is only the “frame” which is different. A short narrative is added at the end of the sutta⁴¹, in which it is said that a certain bhikkhu was standing nearby listening to this sutta. The Buddha notices him, and asks him if he heard this discourse on the Dhamma (dhammapariyāya). When he answers in the affirmative, the Buddha tells him

⁴¹ SN II 75 = SN IV 91
that he should memorize, master, and bear in mind the discourse. He tells him that it is connected with his welfare (atthasamphito), and related to the fundamentals of leading a good life (ādibrahmacariyako). Similar words of emphasis occur after only three other suttas in the Nikāyas.⁶² We thus find the combination of the sequence from the Chachakkasutta and the paticca-samuppāda highlighted here in a significant manner.

We find, thus, the short sequence from the Chachakkasutta, which features the term vedanā in a central position, emphasised in various ways. Firstly there is the repetition of these suttas in which it appears. It is common to find material from one Nikāya repeated in another.⁶³ As far as I can tell, however, the repetition of entire suttas in different books within one Nikāya is rare. This is what we find here, with the same suttas found in two places within the Saṁyuttanikāya. And secondly, the Chachakkasutta passage is emphasised in the third sutta in these groups by the framing story.

The first Chachakkasutta sequence and the Saḷāyatanasamyutta

There are two suttas in the Saḷāyatanasamyutta which feature the sequence from the Chachakkasutta in a version which stops short at the term vedanā:

Dependent on eye and forms, eye-consciousness arises; the meeting of the three is contact; with contact as condition there is vedanā.⁶⁴

The first of these two suttas is introduced by the phrase “I will show you, bhikkhus, a teaching for the comprehension of all attachment,”⁶⁵ and the second, in a similar vein, by the phrase. “I will show you, bhikkhus, a teaching for the exhausting of all attachment.”⁶⁶ Even though the sequence has been abbreviated, vedanā keeps its place in these suttas which teach the comprehension and exhausting of all attachment.

---

⁶² MN III 192, 200 and AN IV 166
⁶⁴ Cakkhuñi ca paticca rūpe ca uppanjati cakkhuvinnānam, tinaṁ saṁyati phasso, phassapaccayā vedanā. SN IV 32-33.
⁶⁵ Sabbupādānapariññāya vo bhikkhave dhammam desissāmi SN IV 32
⁶⁶ Sabbupādānapariññāya vo bhikkhave dhammam desissāmi SN IV 33
The second Chachakkasutta sequence

As mentioned above, the Chachakkasutta of the Majjhimanikāya contains two elements which are related to the place of *vedanā* in the *paticca-samuppāda*, and which are found repeated, sometimes in slightly different guises, in many other places in the Nikāyas. We now move on to the second of these, which is closely related to the first. As with the first passage, this one is repeated for each of the five sense doors and their objects, and for the mind and mental objects:

Bhikkhus, dependent on the eye and forms, eye-consciousness arises; the meeting of the three is contact; with contact as condition there arises [a feeling] felt (*vedayitam*) as pleasant or painful or neither-painful-nor-pleasant.\(^{67}\)

In this passage it is not *vedanā* which exists with contact as its cause, as in the first passage; instead it is *vedayita*, be it pleasant, painful or neutral, which arises (*uppaṭijati*). As we have seen in the first part of this chapter, the term *vedayita* is closely related to *vedanā*: its sense is usually “what is felt or experienced”, or simply “feeling, experience”.

This passage leads into a passage which shows two ways of responding to *vedanā* which is pleasant, unpleasant or neither pleasant nor unpleasant. The first does not allow an end to be made of suffering; the second, which we examined in the previous chapter, does allow the process of liberation to take place. So here we see the term *vedayita* taken up by the term *vedanā*.

The second Chachakkasutta sequence and the Mahāsāḷāyatanāsutta, MN 149

This second sequence from the Chachakkasutta is also found in the *sutta* which follows on from it in the Majjhimanikāya, the Mahāsāḷāyatanāsutta. It appears, though, in a somewhat different shape:

\(^{67}\) Cakkhuñ ca, bhikkhave, paticca rūpe ca uppaṭijati cakkhuviññānam, tiṣṇam saṅgati phasso; phassapaccayā uppaṭijati *vedayitam* sukhaṃ và dukkhaṃ và adukkhanasukhaṃ và. MN III 285
Bhikkhus, when one does not know and see the eye as it actually is, when one does not know and see forms as they actually are, when one does not know and see eye-consciousness as it actually is, when one does not know and see eye-contact as it actually is, when one does not know and see as it actually is [the feeling] felt (vedayitam) as pleasant or painful or neither-painful-nor-painful that arises with eye-contact as condition, then one is inflamed by lust for the eye, for forms, for eye-consciousness, for eye-contact, for [the feeling] felt as pleasant or painful or neither-painful-nor-painful that arises with eye-contact as condition.⁴⁸

Here the items in the sequence are presented in the form of a list, rather than in a sentence which details the causal connections between the various items. It is not said, for instance, that eye-consciousness is dependent upon (paticca) the eye and forms; nor is it said that contact (phassa) is the meeting (samgati) of the eye, forms and eye-consciousness. There is, however, one aspect of the causal nature of this sequence as presented in the Chachakkasutta which is retained, even in the list-like setting of this sutta: that is the connection between “contact” and vedayita. Instead of finding simply “that which is felt as pleasant, painful or neither-painful-nor-painful” after “contact”, we find the following phrase:

... [the feeling] felt as pleasant or painful or neither-painful-nor-painful that arises with eye-contact as condition ...⁶⁹

After the passage from the Mahāsāḷāyatanasutta quoted above comes a phrase which indicates that for the person who is in the state of being inflamed by lust for eye, forms, etc., craving increases (taṇhā ... pāvādāhi). Thus, if we take vedayita as equivalent to vedanā, we have here a restatement of the central section of the patipāca-samappāda in which vedanā plays an important role, that is, “conditioned by contact is vedanā, conditioned by vedanā is craving” (phassapaccayā vedanā, vedanāpaccayā taṇhā).

---
⁴⁸ Cakkhum, bhikkhave, ajānām apassaṃ yathābhūtaṃ, rūpe ajānām apassaṃ yathābhūtaṃ, cakkhuvihihiṣapaṃ ajānām apassaṃ yathābhūtaṃ, cakkhusambhassaṃ ajānām apassaṃ yathābhūtaṃ, yam p’ idam cakkhusampahassacayā uppaṇijati vedayitaṃ sukhaṃ vā dukkhaṃ vā adukkhasukhaṃ vā, tam pi ajānām apassaṃ yathābhūtaṃ ... cakkhusmiṃ sāraṇijati rūpesu sāraṇijati ... MN III 287
⁶⁹ idam cakkhusampahassacayā uppaṇijati vedayitaṃ sukhaṃ vā dukkhaṃ vā adukkhasukhaṃ vā MN III 287
This passage is repeated for the remaining sense doors and their respective objects, and for the mind and mental objects, and is then followed by a reverse statement of each of these, that is, when one knows and sees eye, forms, etc., then one is not inflamed with passion for them, and consequently craving is given up (tāpahī .. pahīyatī).

The second Chachakkasutta sequence and the Saññayatanasamyutta

This second sequence from the Chachakkasutta also plays an important role in one of the largest sānyuttas of the Saññayuttanikāya, the Saññayatanasamyutta (SN IV 1-204). This sānyutta takes up about half of the fourth book of the Saññayuttanikāya, the Saññayatanavagga. The second Chachakkasutta sequence occurs in 67 of the 207 suttas of the Saññayatanasamyutta.70 One of these suttas is traditionally regarded as the Buddha’s third discourse.71

The second Chachakkasutta sequence is treated in a variety of ways in the Saññayatanasamyutta. In a number of places, the sequence is combined with an exposition of the Nikāyas’ three characteristics of existence, that is, impermanence (anicca), suffering (dukkha), and not-self (anatta). The 43rd sutta of the sānyutta, for example, includes the following passage, which is repeated for each of the sense doors and for the mind:

All, bhikkhus, is impermanent. And what all is impermanent? The eye, bhikkhus, is impermanent. Forms are impermanent. Eye consciousness is impermanent. Eye-contact is impermanent. That which is felt (vedayitaṃ) as pleasant or painful or neither-painful-nor-pleasant, which arises with eye-contact as condition, is impermanent.72

This sutta is then repeated with “painful” (dukkha) replacing “impermanent”, and is then repeated again with “not-self” (anatta). Thus the second Chachakkasutta sequence is

71 Number 28, also at Vin I 134
combined with some of the central themes of the Nikāyas. Similar combinations of this sequence with the “three characteristics” are found in suttas 76-78\(^{73}\) and 146-148\(^{76}\) of this samyutta.

Question-and-answer sequence

The second Chachakkasutta sequence also appears a number of times in this samyutta in combination with another sequence which also plays an important role in other places in the Nikāyas. This sequence, which is in a question-and-answer format, provides some clarification of the “three characteristics”. The combination of these two sequences first appears in the 32nd sutta of this samyutta:

“Bhikkhus, what do you think? Is the eye permanent or impermanent?”

“Impermanent, venerable sir.”

“Is what is impermanent suffering or happiness?”

“Suffering, venerable sir.”

Is what is impermanent, suffering, and subject to change, fit to be regarded thus:

“This is mine, this I am, this is my self”\(^{75}\)

“No, venerable sir.”\(^{75}\)

These questions are then put in connection with forms, eye-consciousness, eye-contact, and “that which is felt as pleasant or painful or neither-painful-nor-pleasant, which arises with eye-contact as condition”\(^{76}\); the answers are always the same. All of this is then repeated for the remaining sense doors and their objects, and for the mind and mental objects. This entire sequence is also found in suttas 62, 86, 89, and 149 of the Salāyatanasamyutta.

---

\(^{73}\) SN IV 48-49
\(^{74}\) SN IV 33-35
\(^{75}\) Tāpi kim maññatha bhikkhave cakkham nibbaccaṁ va anicecaṁ va ti.
Anicecaṁ bhante.
Yam panāniccaṁ dukkhaṁ va tam sukhāṁ va ti.
Dukkhaṁ bhante.
Yam panāniccaṁ dukkhaṁ vipariṇāmadhammaṁ kallaṁ nu tam samanupassitaṁ Etam mama eso ham asmi eso me attā ti.
No hetuṁ bhante. SN IV 24-25
\(^{76}\) yam piccha cakkhusampassapaccayā uppanjita vedayitaṁ sukhāṁ va dukkhaṁ va adukkhaṁ asukhaṁ va. SN IV 25
In this passage, *vedayita* ("feeling" or "experience"), which arises dependent on sense-door-contact or mind-door-contact, plays an important role, coming as it does as the final member of each sequence.

The question and answer sequence in which all of this is set is also used in other contexts in the Nikāyas. Most notably, it figures in analyses of the five aggregates (*pañcakkhandha*), which, in these texts, are said to constitute a human being, namely, body (*rūpa*), *vedanā*, perception (*saññā*), *sankhāras*, and consciousness (*viññāna*). The opening section of the Mahāvagga of the Vinaya is a long narrative which covers the Buddha's awakening, and the events which followed it; the discourse which it records as the second discourse of the Buddha, sometimes called the Anattalakkhanasutta, includes this question and answer sequence,\(^7\) repeated for each of the five aggregates. This same passage also appears several times in the Majjhimanikāya,\(^8\) and in many suttas of the Samyuttanikāya, including 22 of the 158 suttaś of the Khandhasamyutta,\(^9\) which is the section of the Samyuttanikāya which treats the five aggregates. Thus this question-and-answer formula plays an important role in the exposition of key concepts of Nikāyas, amongst which we surely must include the notion of "feeling" or "experience" ( *vedayita* ) which arises dependent upon contact at each of the sense-door and the mind. We can also note that the " *vedayita* " of the sequence found in the Saḷāyatanasamyutta overlaps with the *vedanā* of the five aggregates found in the same question-and-answer passages in the Khandhasamyutta, as these two terms are closely related.

The Nandakovādasutta: a part of the second Chachakkasutta sequence and the question-and-answer sequence combined

There is another sutta in the Majjhimanikāya, the Nandakovādasutta, in which we find the first part of the second sequence from the Chachakkasutta which we have been discussing, in combination with the question-and-answer formula. Thus it is established that the eye, forms, and eye-consciousness, as well as the other sense doors and the mind, together with their objects and the resultant consciousness, are impermanent, suffering,
and not to be considered as “I” or “mine”. Instead of proceeding, however, to eye-contact and then to “that which is felt as pleasant or painful or neither-painful-nor-pleasant, which arises with eye-contact as condition”, this passage takes a different turn. The following view is expressed:

... would anyone be speaking rightly who spoke thus: “These six internal bases are impermanent and subject to change, but the pleasant, painful, or neither-painful-nor-pleasant [feeling] that I experience (patiṣamvedemi) in dependence upon (paṭicca) the six internal bases is permanent, everlasting, eternal, not subject to change?”

The answer is, of course, no. The phrase “I experience” is a translation of patisamvedemi. From the passage which follows on from this one and which explains the reason for the answer in the negative, it is clear that patisamvedemi is here being taken as a verbal equivalent of vedanā.

... each vedanā arises in dependence upon its corresponding condition, and with the cessation of its corresponding condition, the vedanā ceases.

Thus the term vedanā in this passage takes up the phrase “I experience pleasure, etc.” of the previous one. This sequence, beginning with the statement of the mistaken view of what one experiences, is then repeated for the six external sense bases (bāhirā āyatanā), that is, forms, noises, smells, etc.

The dependent nature of vedanā is strongly emphasised in the above passage. This dependence is further emphasised in the two similies which accompany these passages:

Now would anyone be speaking rightly who spoke thus: “While this oil-lamp is burning, its oil, wick and flame are impermanent and subject to change, but its glow is permanent, everlasting, eternal, not subject to change”?

---
60 ... yo nu kho evam vadeyya: Cha kho ‘me ajjhatti kā āyatanā, yā ca kho cha ajjhatti ke āyate paṭicca patiṣamvedemi sukkham vā dukkham vā adukkhamasukkham vā, uññ niccaṃ dhuvam sassataṃ aviparināmaṇadhāṃananti, -saṃma na kho so, bhagavīyo, vadeyyā? ... MN III 273
81 Taṅgaṇa taṇṇaṃ, bhante, paccayam paṭicca taṇṇa vedaṇā uppajjanti. Taṅgaṇa taṇṇaṃ paccayassa nirodhā taṇṇa taṇṇa vedaṇā nirujjhanti. MN III 273
Now would anyone be speaking rightly who spoke thus: "The root, trunk, branches, and foliage of this great tree standing possessed of heartwood are impermanent and subject to change, but its shadow is permanent, everlasting, eternal, not subject to change"? \(^3\)

The substanceless nature of *vedanā* is also highlighted in these similies: like the glow from a lamp and the shadow of a tree, their existence is dependent on other factors.

The Nandakovādasutta thus has as its starting point the sequence that we first noticed in the Chachakkasutta, although here we find it in a list-like setting. Rather than moving from eye-consciousness to eye-contact, and from there to "that which is felt as pleasant or painful or neither-painful-nor-pleasant, which arises with eye-contact as condition", however, this *sutta* emphasises the dependence of *vedanā* on the sense doors and on their respective objects, and on the mind and mental objects.

The Chachakkasutta sequences and passages featuring the term "nibbindati"

Both of the sequences from the Chachakkasutta which include the terms *vedanā* and *vedayita* along with other terms from the *paticca-samuppāda* are found in a setting which plays an important role in many places in the Nikāyas. We see the first sequence in this setting in the Chachakkasutta itself, with the first sentence of the following passage repeated for each of the other sense doors and their objects, and for the mind and mental objects:

Seeing thus, bhikkhus, a well-taught noble disciple becomes indifferent to (nibbindati) the eye, indifferent to forms, indifferent to eye-consciousness, indifferent to eye-contact, indifferent to *vedanā*, indifferent to craving. ... Being

\(^3\) ye nu kho, bhaginīyo, evaṃ vadeyya: Amussa telapadippassa jhāyato telam pi aniccam vipariṇāmadhammanṁ vattī pi aniccam vipariṇāmadhammanṁ accii pi aniccam vipariṇāmadhammanm, yā ca khvässa ābhā sā nīccā dhuvā sassatā avipariṇāmadhammanā ti, --samānā nu kho so, bhaginīyo, vadamāno vadeyyati? MN III 273

\(^3\) ye nu kho, bhaginīyo, evaṃ vadeyya: Amussa mahato rukkhassa tiṭṭhato sāravato mīlan pi aniccam vipariṇāmadhammanṁ khandho pi aniccam vipariṇāmadhammanm sākhāpalāsam pi aniccam vipariṇāmadhammanm, yā ca khvässa chāyā sā nīccā dhuvā sassatā avipariṇāmadhammanā ti, --samānā nu kho so, bhaginīyo, vadamāno vadeyyati? MN III 274
indifferent, he becomes dispassionate. Through dispassion [his mind] is liberated. When it is liberated, there comes the knowledge: “It is liberated.” He understands: “Birth is destroyed, the holy life has been lived, what had to be done has been done, there is no more coming to any state of being.”

This passage comes as the conclusion to the Chakkasutta, and follows on from the exposition of the two sequences discussed above. In two of the suttas of the Salāyatanasamynutta a similar passage follows on immediately from a statement of a part of the first Chakkasutta sequence in a form which makes clear its relation to the patīcca-samuppāda.

Dependent on the eye and object arises eye-consciousness. The union of these three is contact. Dependent on contact is vedanā. So seeing, the well-taught noble disciple becomes indifferent to (nibbindati) the eye, to forms, to eye-consciousness, to eye-contact, and to vedanā. Being indifferent, he becomes dispassionate. Through dispassion [his mind] is liberated.

There are 28 suttas in the Salāyatanasamynutta which have the second sequence from the Chakkasutta in this setting, in the following form:

So seeing, bhikkhus, the well-taught noble disciple becomes indifferent to (nibbindati) the eye, to forms, to eye-consciousness, to that which is felt (vedayitam) as pleasant or painful or neither-painful-nor-pleasant, which arises with eye-contact as condition.

---

84 Evam passaṁ bhikkhave suttavā ariyasāvako cakkhusamipii nibbindati, rūpesu pi nibbindati, cakkhuviññāṇe pi nibbindati, cakkhusamphassāe pi nibbindati, vedanāya pi nibbindati, taṇhāya nibbindati. ... Nibbindanā virajjati, virāgā vimuccati, vimuttasnam vinuttaṁ iñī állaṁ hoti: Khīpājati, vusitaṁ brahmacariyaṁ, katam karanīyaṁ, nāparam itthattāyati pajānati. MN III 286-7

85 Cakkhuñ-ca paṭicca rūpe ca upajjati cakkhuviññāṇaṁ, tiṇṇaṁ sangati phasso, phassapaccayā vedanā. Evam-passaṁ bhikkhave suttavā ariyasāvako cakkhusamipii nibbindati, rūpesu pi nibbindati, cakkhuviññāṇe pi nibbindati, cakkhusamphassāe pi nibbindati, vedanāya pi nibbindati. Nibbindanā virajjati, virāgā vimuccati. SN IV 32-34

86 Evam passam bhikkhave suttavā ariyasāvako cakkhusamipii nibbindati, rūpesu pi nibbindati, cakkhuviññāṇe pi nibbindati, cakkhusamphassāe pi nibbindati, yam pidam cakkhusamphassapaccayā upajjati vedayitam sukhaṁ vā dukkhaṁ vā adukkhamasukhaṁ vā tasmiṁ pi nibbindati. SN IV 20 and passim.
The remaining senses and their objects, and the mind and mental objects, are presented in the same way. This is then followed by the formula which describes the process of liberation, as in the Chachakkasutta.

Amongst these 28 suttas of the Saḷāyatanasamīyutta, this passage provides the conclusion to all five of the suttas which feature the “three characteristics” question-and-answer formula discussed above.87 Another of these suttas with the second sequence in the above setting is the one which is considered to be the Buddha’s third discourse, the Ādittasutta (“On fire”).88

As with the question-and-answer formula, this formula with the verb nibbindati (“he becomes indifferent to”) is found in connection with other key concepts of the Nikāyas. In particular, it is used in combination with the five aggregates in the Majjhimanikāya89 and in many places in the Khandhasamīyutta of the Saṁyuttanikāya. In this way, these sequences which we first find in the Chachakkasutta are placed amongst the central concerns of the Nikāyas.

There is another sutta in which this nibbindati formula is applied to the three vedanās, pleasant, painful, and neither-painful-nor-pleasant. This is the Dīghanakhasutta of the Majjhimanikāya,90 which has been examined in some detail in the first chapter.

The Anāthapiṇḍikovādasutta, MN 143

The above analysis of the two sequences from the Chachakkasutta gives an overview of the place of vedanā in such causal sequences, and of their relationship to the paṭicca-samuppāda. We also saw that there are many suttas in the Nikāya in which we find passages which have much in common with the sequences found in the Chachakkasutta. There are, however, a number of sequences which are left out of this kind of classification, and which also include the term vedanā. The Anāthapiṇḍikovādasutta of

---

87 suttas 32, 62, 86, 89, and 149
88 SN IV 20
89 MN I 139 and MN III 20
90 MN I 500
the Majjhimanikāya contains such a sequence. In it we find the following passage repeated numerous times:

Then, householder, you should train thus: "I will not cling to the eye, and my consciousness will not be dependent on the eye". Thus you should train.91

This same phrase is then repeated for the remaining senses and for the mind. After that it is repeated for the objects of the senses and of the mind. Then it is repeated for consciousness (viññāna) associated with each of the senses and with the mind, beginning with eye-consciousness (cakkhu-viññāna). Then it is repeated for contact associated with each of the senses and with the mind, beginning with eye-contact (cakkhu-samphassa). After that it is repeated for vedanā which is born from the contact at each of the sense doors and the mind, beginning with vedanā born of eye-contact (cakkhu-samphassajā vedanā).

Thus far the sequence of terms is the same as that found in the Mahāsālāyatanasutta of the Majjhimanikāya92 and in many of the suttas of the Sālāyatanasamyutta which we have looked at above, except that instead of having as its last element "that which is felt as pleasant or painful or neither-painful-nor-pleasant that arises with eye-contact as condition,"93 we now have "vedanā born of eye-contact" (cakkhu-samphassajā vedanā). In both cases, these phrases are repeated for the other sense doors and for the mind. The terms in all of these suttas are presented as a list. The only term which is stated to be causally dependent on the previous item in the list is vedanā, or vedayita, which is dependent on contact.

We have noticed that in some suttas this basic sequence extends further, to include the term that follows vedanā in the pāṭicca-samuppāda, that is, craving (taṇhā).94 Here in the Anāthapindikovādasutta, further items are added to the list, but in this case they are not directly related to the pāṭicca-samuppāda. After "vedanā born of eye-contact" (cakkhu-

91 Tasmātiha te, gahapatī, evaṃ sikkhitabbam: Na cakkhaṃ upādiyissāmi, na ca me cakkhuṇissitaṃ viññānaṃ bhavissati. Evaṃ hi te, gahapatī, sikkhitabbam. MN III 259
92 MN III 287
93 yam p'o idaṃ cakkhusamphassapaccayā uppajjati vedayitaṃ sukhām vā dukkhaṃ vā adukkhamasukhām vā, MN III 287, etc.
94 At MN III 280-82; SN II 71-75; SN IV 86-88, 90-91.
samphassajā vedaṇā), comes a list of six elements (dhātu), namely, earth, water, fire, wind, space (ākāsa) and consciousness. Then comes a listing of the five aggregates, followed by the four formless jhānas, and by other groups.

Conclusion

This detailed study of the role of vedaṇā in causal sequences found in the Nikāyas shows that there are indeed passages in which this term is given marked emphasis, and that the striking statements quoted at the beginning of this chapter from the writings of Kalupahana, Nyanaponika and Bhikkhu Bodhi do have a basis in the texts, especially when taken in conjunction with the passages explored in the first chapter of this thesis. In causal sequences of different kinds we find vedaṇā being given an important role. As far as I know, this thesis is the first study to explore this question in any detail.
Chapter Three: Physical and mental aspects of *vedanā*

Most modern commentators on the Pali texts take *vedanā* to be a purely mental phenomenon. The meditation teacher S.N. Goenka, however, emphatically stresses the physical nature of *vedanā* ("sensations"): 

Equanimity must be practised at the level of bodily sensations in order to make a real change in one’s life. At every moment sensations are arising within the body. Usually the conscious mind is unaware of them, but the unconscious mind feels the sensations and reacts to them with craving and aversion. If the mind is trained to become fully conscious of all that occurs within the physical structure and at the same time to maintain equanimity then the old habit of blind reaction is broken. ...

There are two aspects of the human phenomenon: material and mental, body and mind. One must observe both. But one cannot actually experience the body without awareness of what arises in the body, that is, sensation. Similarly, one cannot observe the mind separately from what arises in the mind, that is, thought. As one goes deeper in experiencing the truth of mind and matter, it becomes clear that whatever arises in the mind is also accompanied by a physical sensation. Sensation is of central importance for experiencing the reality of both mind and body, and it is the point at which reactions start. In order to observe the truth of oneself and to stop generating mental defilements, one must be aware of sensations and remain equanimous as continuously as possible.¹

The recent studies of S. Hamilton have also focused on the importance of the body in descriptions of the human phenomenon in the Pali texts:

As my description of the operating of the khandhas has shown, there is no idea of one being a body with a detachable psychological appendage: the body is intrinsic to the operating of the cognitive apparatus as a whole, which includes

the complexities of one’s emotional, appetitive, intellectual, psychological, aesthetic—and so on—make-up.²

Hamilton devotes very little space, however, to analysis of passages on vedanā. This chapter is a study of descriptions mental and physical aspects of vedanā found in the Nikāyas.

In a sutta of the Vedanāsamyutta, the Buddha is represented as saying that vedanā can be understood according to a number of different classifications. The first of these states that “there are two vedanās ... in [the Buddha’s] way of expounding.”³ The text continues:

And what, bhikkhus, are the two vedanās? They are bodily and mental vedanās. These, bhikkhus, are called “the two vedanās.”⁴

Later in the same sutta five vedanās are discussed:

And what, bhikkhus, are the five vedanās? They are the faculties (indriya) of pleasure, pain, happiness, unhappiness, and indifference.⁵

No further information is given here concerning this manner of classifying vedanā, but we find a series of three suttas in the fifth volume of the Samyuttanikāya which reveals that this manner of classifying is also connected with the physical and mental aspects of vedanā. In two of these suttas, these five faculties are equated with the commonly found three-fold classification of vedanā:

Now, bhikkhus, the faculty of pleasure and the faculty of happiness should be regarded as pleasurable vedanā. Likewise the faculty of pain and the faculty of unhappiness should be regarded as unpleasant vedanā. Likewise the faculty of

³ dve pi mayā vedanā vuttā pariṭiyena, SN IV 231
⁴ Katam ca bhikkhave dve vedanā. Kāyikā ca cetasikā ca, imā vuccanti bhikkhave dve vedanā. SN IV 231
⁵ Katam ca bhikkhave pañcavedanā. Sukhindriyam dakkhindriyam somanassindriyam domanassindriyam upokhindriyam imā vuccanti bhikkhave pañcavedanā. SN IV 231
indifference should be regarded as *vedanā* which is neither pleasant nor unpleasant.\(^6\)

In all three of these suttas the first and second faculties (*sukhindriya* and *dukkhindriya*) are identified with bodily pleasure and bodily pain (*kāyikam sukham, kāyikam dukkham*); the second and third (*somanassindriya* and *domanassindriya*) with mental pleasure and mental pain (*cetasikam sukham, cetasikam dukkham*); and the fifth (*upekkhindriya*) is identified with that which is neither pleasant nor unpleasant at either the bodily level or the mental level (*kāyikam và cetasikam và neva sātam nāsātam*).\(^7\)

The physical aspect of *vedanā*

Sabbāsavadassutta passage

I wish to concentrate firstly on some passages which are primarily concerned with the physical aspect of *vedanā*. To begin, let us look at a group of passages which are thematically related to the passages from the Mahāparinibbānasutta which we noticed in the first chapter of this thesis. There the Buddha was described as “enduring” (*adhivāseti*) harsh *vedanā* in his final illness. The second *sutta* of the Majjhimanikāya can be taken as the *locus classicus* for the related passages. This is the Sabbāsavasutta in which *āsavas* (defilements) are classified according to the way in which they are to be abandoned (*pahātabbā*). The fourth of the seven types described are *āsavas* that are to be abandoned by enduring (*āsavā adhivāsānā pahātabbā*).\(^8\) The description of this process runs as follows:

> Here a bhikkhu, reflecting wisely, bears cold and heat, hunger and thirst, and contact with gadflies, mosquitoes, wind, the sun, and creeping things; he endures ill-spoken, unwelcome words and arisen bodily *vedanā* that are painful, racking, sharp, piercing, disagreeable, distressing, and menacing to life.\(^9\)

---

\(^6\) Tatra bhikkhave yaṁ ca sukhindriyam yaṁ ca somanassindriyam sukhaṁ sā vedanā daṭṭhabbā. Tatra bhikkhave yaṁ ca dukkhindriyam yaṁ ca domanassindriyam dukkhaṁ sā vedanā daṭṭhabbā. Tatra bhikkhave yadikam upekkhindriyam adukkhamasukhaṁ sā vedanā daṭṭhabbā. SN V 210 and 211

\(^7\) MN I 7,10

\(^8\) Ittha bhikkhave bhikkhu patisankhā yoniso kho hoti sītassa unāhassā jīvacchāya pipāsāya dhamma-makasa-vatātapa-sīmāppasampassānāṁ, duruttānāṁ durāgatānāṁ vacanapatānāṁ, uppannānaṁ

\(^9\) SN V 208-11
The Pali word used to describe these vedanā as “bodily” is sārīrika, an adjective derived from the noun sarīra, meaning “body”. The term kāyika, which also means bodily, and which is used in the passages quoted above which describe the bodily and mental aspects of vedanā, is thus not used here. According to this passage, then, certain āsavas, which are not specified, as indeed they are not for any of the methods of “abandoning” which are described in this sutta, are abandoned when the bhikkhu endures severely painful bodily vedanā.

Bodily vedanā in the context of the practice of the satipaṭṭhānas

The Sabbāsasutta passage in the Kāyagatāsatisutta

Passages very similar to this occur in two other suttas of the Majjhimanikāya. The contexts in which these passages appear in these suttas are of considerable interest for this study. The first sutta is the Kāyagatāsatisutta, the discourse on mindfulness of the body. The first part of this sutta is the same as the section of the Satipaṭṭhānasutta which describes the observation of the body (kāyānupassanā). The concluding section of the sutta is a description of ten benefits which can be expected from the practice of mindfulness of the body. The second of these is very similar to the passage quoted above from the Sabbāsasasutta.

There is, however, an interesting distinction between these passages. In the Sabbāsasasutta, the enduring of painful bodily vedanā is said to be a means of abandoning a certain type of āsava. In the Kāyagatāsatisutta, the enduring of painful bodily vedanā is achieved by means of other practices. The dual role of enduring painful vedanā can be seen to be paralleled by some of the descriptions of vedanā which we noted in the first chapter. In that chapter, many examples were given of the role that vedanā plays in certain soteriological processes; and, as we saw, vedanā also plays a role in a description of a person who has achieved his or her soteriological goal which occurs

sārīrikānaṁ vedanānaṁ dukkhaṁ tippaṇanāṁ kharānaṁ katukānaṁ asittanāṁ amanapānaṁ pāpaṭṭhānaṁ adhiśīpakajātiko hoti. MN I 10
10 MN III 89-92
a number of times in the Nikāyas. In the Majjhimanikāya, this description of a liberated person occurs in the Dhātuvibhaṅgasutta:

If he feels a pleasant feeling, he understands: “It is impermanent; there is no holding to it; there is no delight in it.” ... If he feels a pleasant feeling, he feels it detached ...

In the Dhātuvibhaṅgasutta, of course, the context is broader. In the Kāyasattāsatisutta, one who practises mindfulness of the body as described in the suttas is able to endure painful bodily vedanā. The passage from the Dhātuvibhaṅgasutta describes a person who is detached from vedanā which is pleasant, unpleasant and neither pleasant nor unpleasant. There is also no indication whether these vedanās are bodily or mental. There is, however, a broad similarity in the intent of these two passages: the result of spiritual practice is described in terms of vedanā.

The Sabbāsavasutta passage in the Dantabhūmisutta

The other sutta of the Majjhimanikāya in which we find the passage which includes the description of a bhikkhu who endures painful bodily vedanā is the Dantabhūmisutta. Here as well the context is of great significance. The middle section of this sutta12 is made up of a long description of the stages through which an elephant trainer takes a wild forest elephant in order to train it, and of a comparison of this with the way in which the Buddha trains a disciple. The Buddha’s training is part of a description which appears in a number of suttas in the Nikāyas, including all but one of the suttas of the first volume of the Dīghanikāya.13 L. Schmithausen calls it the “stereotyped detailed description of the Path to Liberation”.

11 So sukhāṇi ce vedanam vedeti, Sā anicca ti pājānāti; Anājihosita ti pājānāti; Anabhinandita ti pājānāti. ... So sukhāṇi ce vedanam vedeti, visamyaṃta naṃ vedetī .... MN III 244.
12 MN III 132-136
13 MN, eg. No. 27 = I 179 ff.; No. 51 = I 344 ff.; no.60 = I 412 f.; etc.; DN eg. I 62 ff., 171 ff., 206 ff., etc.; AN eg. 3.38 and 59 = I 163 ff.; 4.198 = II 208 ff.; 5.75 and 76 = III 92 f. and 100, etc.
The standard pattern of this description is however interrupted in a manner which is not found in any of its other rehearsals. After the stage of overcoming the five “hindrances” (nīvaraṇa, namely craving (abhijjhā), aversion (vyāpāda), sloth and torpor (thīnamiddha), agitation (uddhaccakukkucca) and doubt (vicikicchā)) is described, instead of proceeding to a description of the four jhānas, as is usually the case, the text continues with the standard description of the four establishings of mindfulness. There then follows a short passage on the advantages of the practice of the four establishings of mindfulness, and soon after the stereotyped detailed description is resumed from the description of the second jhāna up to the realisation of the four noble truths and the destruction of the āsavas. After this comes the passage quoted above from the Sabbāsagasutta, which includes the description of the bhikkhu who endures painful bodily vedanās.

We can thus establish a connection between the Kāyatāgātásatisutta and the Dantabhūmisutta. Both of them contain in their concluding sections the passage which includes the description of a person who endures painful bodily vedanās. And both of them give importance to the practice of the establishings of mindfulness. In the case of the former, only the first of the four establishings of mindfulness is given, the observation of the body (kāyānupassāna), but that is given with all the detail that we find in the two Satipaṭṭhānasuttas. In the latter, all of the four establishings of mindfulness are mentioned, but only in the summary formula which is found in the introductory section of the Satipaṭṭhānasuttas. There seems, therefore, to be a connection between these two practices, the practice of enduring painful bodily vedanā and the practice of the establishings of mindfulness.

Sabbāsagasutta passage and the Mahāparinibbānasutta

In the first chapter of this thesis attention was drawn to a passage in the Mahāparinibbānasutta in which the Buddha is described as enduring (adhivāseti) vedanā.
Now during the rainy season, a severe sickness arose in the Fortunate One, with sharp vedanā as if he were about to die. But the Fortunate One bore them mindfully, with understanding and without being disturbed.\textsuperscript{13}

In this passage, vedanā is not described as being bodily vedanā. But nevertheless there are two important connections with the Sabbāsavasutta passage. The first is that vedanā in both passages is connected in some way with illness. The final illness of the Buddha is being described in the Mahāparinibbānasutta. The vedanā here is maraṇantika, or associated with maraṇa, death. In the Sabbāsavasutta passage, amongst the adjectives describing unpleasant bodily vedanā we find the term pāpa-hara, which literally means “taking away life” (PED, sv). In both of these passages, this vedanā is endured patiently.

The other important theme that these passages have in common is their association with the practice of the four establishings of mindfulness. The Buddha is described in this passage from the Mahāparinibbānasutta with two of the key terms from the explanation of this practice, satī (mindful) and sampajāna (with understanding). As we have just seen, there are two suttas in the Majjhimanikāya, the Kāyasatīsatisutta and the Dantabhūmisutta, which contain in their concluding sections the passage from the Sabbāsavasutta, and which give importance to the practice of the establishings of mindfulness.

Sabbāsavasutta passage and three suttas from the Saṁyuttanikāya

There is a passage which appears in two suttas of the Saṁyuttanikāya which combines elements of the Sabbāsavasutta passage and the Mahāparinibbānasutta passage in a significant manner:

Now at that time the Fortunate One’s foot was pierced by a stone splinter. Sorely indeed did the Fortunate One feel it, grievous the vedanā he suffered in the body,

\textsuperscript{13} Atha kho Bhagavato vassāpāgatassa kharo ābādho uppajji, bābhā vedanā vattanti maraṇantikā. Tā sudam Bhagavā sato sampajāno adhivāsed avihānamāno. DN II 99
keen and sharp, acute, unpleasant and unwelcome. But he endured all this mindfully, clearly aware and without becoming distressed.\textsuperscript{16}

The context in both cases is similar to that of our passage from the Mahāparinibbānasutta: something has happened to cause the Buddha unpleasant vedanā. And the last sentence in each passage is the same: the Buddha bears the vedanā with mindfulness and understanding. In this passage, though, the vedanā is described in a different way: it appears here as it does in the Sabbāsavasutta, except that the final attribute, “taking away life” (pānahara) is missing. In the present discussion, the point to note is that the vedanā in this passage which bears close resemblance to the Mahāparinibbānasutta passage is specified as being bodily (sārīrika) vedanā.

In the first of these Samyuttanikāya suttas, it is then reported that the middle section of this passage was repeated six times by six divine beings (devatās), in connection with six different attributes of the Buddha. This middle section covers the key points that we have been discussing:

He endures, mindful and discerning, the vedanā that have arisen in his body, keen and sharp, acute, unpleasant and unwelcome, and he is not distressed.\textsuperscript{17}

The practice of the establishing of mindfulness in connection with bodily vedanā is thus given particular emphasis here.

These elements are again combined in a sutta in the Anuruddhasamyutta of the Samyuttanikāya. The bhikkhu Anuruddha is here described as being seriously ill. Some bhikkhus come to visit him, and ask how it is that the painful, bodily vedanā that have arisen\textsuperscript{18} do not take hold of his mind and remain (cittam na pariyādāya tiṭṭhati). He replies that it is because his mind is well established in the four establishments of mindfulness. So once again we find bodily vedanā associated with the four establishments

\textsuperscript{16} Tenā kho pana samayena Bhagavato pādō sakalikāya khato boti. Bhūsā sudām Bhagavato vedanā vattati sārīrika vedanā dukkhā tībbā kharā kaṭukā asāti ahamāpā. Tā sudām Bhagavā sato sampajāno adhīvāseti avihānāmāno. SN I 27 and SN I 110
\textsuperscript{17} samugpamā sārīrika vedanā dukkhā tībbā kharā kaṭukā asāti ahamāpā, sato sampajāno adhīvāseti avihānāmāno. SN I 28
\textsuperscript{18} upaṇṇamā sārīrika dukkhā vedanā SN V 302
of mindfulness. In this context we may recall that it was Anuruddha who is described as uttering the verses which follow the passing away of the Buddha in the Mahāparinibbānasutta, which we looked at in the first chapter of this thesis. These verses refer to the Buddha’s enduring of *vedanā*: “With undischastened mind he endured sensation.” 19

All of these passages highlight the role of bodily *vedanā* in connection with the practice of the establishing of mindfulness.

Bodily *vedanā* in other contexts

The Sabbāsasavutta passage and two *suttas* from the Aṅguttaranikāya

The passages that we have been examining so far have been concerned with bodily *vedanā* and the establishing of mindfulness. There are, however, several passages in the Nikāyas which deal with bodily *vedanā* in other contexts. The passage quoted above from the Sabbāsasavutta, which includes the notion of enduring painful bodily *vedanā*, appears a number of times in the Aṅguttaranikāya. 20 One of these occurrences is particularly noteworthy. In this *sutta*, a course of action is outlined which leads to ten desired states. The sixth of these desired states is that described in the passage quoted from the Sabbāsasavutta. The practice which is said to be the means of achieving each of these states is a kind of summary, albeit in a very generalized form, of some of the most important soteriological practices found in the Nikāyas:

... he should be one who fulfils the moral habits, who is intent on mental tranquillity within, whose meditation is uninterrupted, who is endowed with vision, a cultivator of empty places. 21

The last of the ten benefits which come from this practice, as listed in this *sutta*, is liberation (*vimutti*) which is free from the āsava. The enduring of bodily *vedanā* thus finds itself amongst the most significant concepts and practices of the Nikāyas.

19 Asallīca cittena vедanā jahavāsayi DN II 157
20 AN II 118, 143, 153; III 163, 389; AN V 132
21 sīlesvev’ asa paripūrakāri ajjhātam cetosanatham anuyutto anirākatijhāno vipassanāyā samanāgato brūhetā suñāgārānam AN V 131
Another noteworthy occurrence of the last section of our Sabbāśavasutta passage, the section which describes the bearing of bodily vedanā, occurs in the Ātappasutta of the Aṅguttaranikāya.\(^2\) In this sutta three “grounds” (ṭhāna) on which energy is to be exerted are described. The first two of these are also found in descriptions of “right effort” (sammāvāyāma) as part of the noble eight-fold path and “right exertion” (sammappadīhāna) as part of the thirty-seven factors leading to enlightenment (bodhipakkhiyadhārama). These are the effort to not allow evil states (dhammas) to arise and the effort to cause good states to arise. The third ground on which to apply effort, as described in this sutta, is for the bearing of painful bodily vedanā which has arisen. The description here is identical with the description of painful vedanā found in the Sabbāśavasutta passage quoted above. Here this passage is placed alongside items which figure prominently in the most important enumerations of soteriological practices found in the Nikāyas. The last sentence of the sutta underlines the high value placed upon these practices:

Now when a bhikkhu exerts himself on these three grounds, he is called “strenuous, wise, mindful, and for making a complete end of suffering”.\(^3\)

The bhikkhu here is described with one of the key terms from the practice of the establishing of mindfulness, sata. And he is also described as being one who is “for making a complete end of suffering” (sammā dukkhassa antakiriyāya), one of the descriptions of the goal of the Buddha’s teaching. So the bearing of painful bodily vedanā is here placed at the heart of the central concerns of the Nikāyas.

Bodily vedanā in the Vedanāsamyutta

Our passage from the Sabbāśavasutta speaks of vedanā which is “arisen” (uppanna), “bodily” (sāriṇika), “painful” (dukkha) and “taking away life” (pānahara). These same words are used to describe vedanā in the verse section of one of the suttas of the Vedanāsamyutta, the section of the Saṃyuttanikāya devoted to suttas dealing with

\(^2\) AN I 153
\(^3\) Ayam vuccatā bhikkhave bhikkhu ātāpi āipako sato sammā dukkhassa antakiriyāyā ti. AN I 153
vedanā. This is the Pāṭālasutta. The prose section of this sutta is also of great interest for our study of bodily vedanā. The word pātāla in the title of this sutta means cliff or abyss, and we are told that here it is a term for painful bodily vedanā. An ordinary person who has not heard the Buddha’s teaching (assutavā pathuṣījano) is described as becoming very upset when he comes into contact with painful bodily vedanā. It is said of him that he has not come out of the abyss (pāṭāle na paccuṭṭhāsi), that he has not found safe ground (gāḍhaṇa naṇīhagā). The “noble disciple who has heard (sc. the Buddha’s teaching)” (sutavā ariyasāvako) on the other hand, does not become upset in similar circumstances; he has come out of the abyss and found safe ground.

The verses which follow this prose passage repeat the main points of the prose, but add some terminology which is also found in the Sabbāsavasutta. As well as being “bodily” and “painful”, vedanā is now also “arisen” and “taking away life”. Furthermore, in the verse section, vedanā is described as being either “endured” (adhiṃvāseti) or not endured, again using the same terminology as the Sabbāsavasutta.

Thus there are a large number of important passages in the Nikāyas which place marked emphasis on the physical aspect of vedanā.

Mental aspect of vedanā

There are far fewer references in the Nikāyas to vedanā which is explicitly mental (cetasika) than to vedanā which is explicitly bodily.

The Cūḷavedallasutta

Perhaps the most notable reference occurs in a passage in the Cūḷavedallasutta of the Majjhimanikāya in which the term saṅkhāra (“formations”) is being discussed.²⁵ The lay disciple Visākha questions the bhikkhuni Dhammaddinna as to the number of saṅkhāras. She replies that there are three: saṅkhāra of the body (kāyasāṅkhāra), saṅkhāra of speech (vācīsaṅkhāra), and saṅkhāra of the mind (cittasaṅkhāra). He then enquires as to the

²⁴ sārīrikānaṁ kho etam bhikkhave dukkhaṁ vedanānaṁ adhiṃvane yad idam pāṭālo AS IV 206
²⁵ MN I 301
nature of these three, and is told that breathing in and out is a *saṅkhāra* of the body, that initial application of thought and sustained application of thought (*vitakkavicāra*) together is a *saṅkhāra* of speech, and that perception (*saññā*) and *vedanā* together is a *saṅkhāra* of the mind (*saññā ca vedanā ca cittasaṅkhāro*). Visākha then asks for the reasons for these classifications. For the third *saṅkhāra*, Dhammadinnā tells him that perception and *vedanā* are both mental (*cetasikā*), that these two phenomena are “bound to the mind” or “dependent on the mind” (*cittapaṭibaddha*), and for this reason they are classed as a *saṅkhāra* of the mind.26

Curiously, however, it is in this same *sutta* that we find a definition of *vedanā* which states that there can be either a physical or mental aspect to *vedanā*:

> Friend Visākha, whatever is felt bodily or mentally as pleasant and soothing is pleasant *vedanā*.27

This is then repeated for unpleasant (*dukkha*) *vedanā*, and for *vedanā* which is neither pleasant nor unpleasant (*adukkharamasukhā*).

Are we dealing here with a logical inconsistency in the texts, or is there another explanation? The fact that in the first passage *vedanā* is classed as a phenomenon (*dhamma*) which is “bound to the mind” or “dependent on the mind” (*cittapaṭibaddha*) does not rule out the possibility of *vedanā* also being related to the body in some way. Another possible explanation is that certain types of *vedanā* may be related to the body. This at least is S. Hamilton’s view of the situation. In connection with the passage just quoted from the Cūḷavedallasutta,28 she notes that *vedanā* “is experienced (*vedayitaṃ*) either bodily or mentally”29. She goes on to comment that “this analysis refers to different types of feeling and does not mean that all feelings have both physical and mental aspects”.30

---

26 *Saññā ca vedanā ca cetasikā ete dhammā cittapaṭibaddhā, tasmā saññā ca vedanā ca cittasaṅkhāro ti* MN I 301

27 *Yaṃ kho āvuso Visākha kāyikaṃ vā cetasikaṃ vā sukhaṃ sātaṃ vedayitaṃ ayaṃ sukhaṃ vedanā*. MN I 302

28 MN I 302


The Mahāvedallasutta

Other passages in the Nikāyas which allow us to conceive of vedanā in terms which are primarily mental are even less conclusive. In the Mahāvedallasutta, which is the companion sutta to the Cūḷavedallasutta, whence we have drawn the above passages, we find further clues as to the status of vedanā. In particular, we find vedanā closely associated with certain mental facultics. In the Cūḷavedallasutta we saw vedanā associated with perception (saññā), and these two described as “bound to the mind” (cittapaṭṭibaddha). In the Mahāvedallasutta we come across the following passage:

Vedanā, perception, and consciousness, friend -- these states are conjoined, not disjoined, and it is impossible to separate each of these states from the others in order to describe the difference between them. For what one feels, that one perceives; and what one perceives, that one cognizes.  

Vedanā here seems to be classed as a purely mental phenomenon. Again, however, we find our view on this matter modified by other information from the same sutta. In the passage immediately preceding the one just quoted, the three phenomena--perception (saññā), consciousness (viññāṇa) and vedanā--are described in different terms. Part of these descriptions do little to clarify the meanings of the terms: they merely give the verbal forms related to each noun. For vedanā, for example, we find the Pali phrase vedeti vedetitī kho āvuso, tasmā vedanā ti vuccati. We could translate this as “one feels, one feels,” friend, therefore it is called “feeling.” For consciousness (viññāṇa) we find “one cognizes, one cognizes,” friend, therefore it is called “consciousness” and for perception (saññā) “one perceives, one perceives”, therefore it is called “perception.”

The examples given after each of these etymological explanations, however, may throw some light on the subject. The example given for consciousness is as follows:

31 Yā ca āvuso vedanā ya ca saññā ya ca viññāṇaṁ ime dharmam saṁsāṣṭhā no viṣaṁsaṣṭhā, na ca labbhā imesam dharmānaṁ viññābhijñātva nānākaraṇaṁ paññūpetum. Yaṁ āvuso vedeti tàm sañjānāti, yaṁ sañjānāti tàm viññātī, tasmā ime dharmam saṁsāṣṭhā no viṣaṁsaṣṭhā, na ca labbhā... MN I 293
32 MN I 293
33 viññāṇati viññāṇiti kho āvuso, tasmā viññāṇan ti vuccati MN I 292
34 sañjānāti, sañjānāṇiti kho āvuso, tasmā saññā ti vuccati MN I 293
One cognizes: “[This is] pleasant”; one cognizes: “[This is] painful; one cognizes: [This is] neither-painful-nor-pleasant”. 35

The difference with the example given for vedanā is slight but significant:

One feels pleasure, one feels pain, one feels neither-pain-nor-pleasure. 36

In the case of consciousness, the object experienced--pleasure, pain, etc.--is followed by “t” in the Pali, indicating that the object is actually only thought of, or conceptualized. In the case of vedanā, there is a direct experience of the object. The text does not elaborate on this point, but one could suppose that this direct experiencing could take place at either the mental or the physical level, or both.

Vedanā and the term nāmarūpa

Some more clues as to the mental or physical nature of vedanā can be found in an examination of the term nāmarūpa. The standard definition of this term in the Nikāyas includes the term vedanā as a part of nāma. In the Sammādiṭhisutta of the Majjhimanikāya, for example, we find the following passage:

Vedanā, perception, volition, contact, and attention—these are called nāma. The four great elements and the material form derived from the four great elements—these are called rūpa. 37

This seems to place vedanā squarely in the field of mental events, and to contrast it with things of a physical nature. Indeed one sometimes finds nāma translated as “mentality” in this context, and rūpa as “physicality” or “materiality”. It is possible, however, that these translations have been influenced by usages of the terms nāma, rūpa and nāmarūpa which are later than those found in the four (mainly) prose Nikāyas. These terms have a

35 sukāna ti pi viññāṇati, dukkhaṇ ti pi viññāṇati, adukkaṃhaṃ sakhaṇ ti pi viññāṇati. MN I 292
36 sukāna ti vedeti, dukkhaṇ ti vedeti, adukkaṃhaṃ sakhaṇ ti vedeti. MN I 293
37 Vedanā saññā cetanā phasso manasikāro, idaṃ voccat āvuso nāmaṃ, cattāri ca mahābhūtāni caturānā ca mahābhūtānāṃ upādāya rūpaṃ, idaṃ voccat āvuso rūpaṃ. MN I 53
complex history. The literal meaning of nāma is “name”. By the time of the early commentarial literature, in the context of the five aggregates (khandhas), the term is regularly used to refer to the “four immaterial (arūpino) aggregates”\textsuperscript{38}—vedanā, perception (saññā), saṅkhāra, and consciousness (viññāṇa)—which is contrasted with the aggregate of matter (rūpa). Some of this early commentarial literature has canonical status, such as the Niddesa, which is a commentary on parts of the Suttanipāta. Thus the commentaries take nāmarūpa as a designation of the five aggregates, which together are given as a description of the functioning of an individual person.

In the four prose Nikāyas, however, the term nāmarūpa is not used as a designation of the five aggregates. The above passage, for instance, is taken from a sutta of which the purpose is in part to explain each of the members of the dependent origination schema (paṭicca-samuppāda). Now in this series, consciousness (viññāṇa) is said to give rise to nāmarūpa\textsuperscript{39} According to the commentarial classification, though, consciousness, as one of the five aggregates, is a part of nāmarūpa.

And while we do find other elements in the above definition of nāma which are from the aggregates without rūpa—that is perception (saññā), and in some places volition (cetanā) is equated with the saṅkhāras\textsuperscript{40}—there are some elements which are extraneous to this group. The most significant of these in the present discussion is the term “contact” (phassa). Contact is usually understood in the Nikāyas to have both a physical and a mental aspect. Indeed in the same sutta in which the above passage is found, six types of contact are listed, corresponding to the five physical senses and the mind.\textsuperscript{41} So we find “contact of the body” (kāyasamphassa) alongside “contact of the mind” (manosamphassa), as well as “contact of the eye” (cakkhusamphassa), etc. The term vedanā may well not be intended here in a purely mental sense. Vedanā, and nāma, may well include here physical as well as mental events.

\textsuperscript{38} cattāro arūpino khandhā, Nd1 435 = Nd2 339
\textsuperscript{39} viññāṇasamudayā nāmarūpasamudayo, eg. MN I 53
\textsuperscript{40} eg. SN III 60
\textsuperscript{41} MN I 52
Vedanā: mind and body

We come now to look at those passages in the Nikāyas which are explicitly concerned with both the mental and the physical aspect of *vedanā*. The most significant of these is found in the Sallasutta of the Vedanāsamyutta. The soteriological significance of this *sutta* has already been referred to in the first chapter of this thesis. Here we will examine in detail what it has to say on the mental and physical aspects of *vedanā*. The theme, as announced in the opening lines, is the difference between an “ordinary person who has not heard (sc. the Buddha’s teaching)” (*assutavā puthuṭijana*) who feels pleasant, painful and neither-pleasant-nor-painful *vedanā*, and a “noble disciple who has heard (sc. the Buddha’s teaching)” (*sutavā ariyasāvako*) who feels pleasant, painful and neither-pleasant-nor-painful *vedanā*. The explanation of this is given firstly in terms of painful *vedanā*. The ordinary person who is “touched” (*puttho*) by painful *vedanā* is upset by this experience. We are told that he feels two *vedanās*, bodily (*kāyika*) and mental (*cetasika*). This is likened to a man whom people pierce with one arrow, and whom they then pierce with a second arrow. The noble disciple, on the other hand, when touched by painful *vedanā*, is not upset. We are told that he feels one *vedanā*, which is bodily, and that he does not feel a mental *vedanā*. Accordingly, the simile in this passage is of a man whom people pierce once with an arrow, but who is not pierced by them a second time. This view on the relationship between bodily *vedanā* and mental *vedanā* is not expressed in these terms at any other place in the Nikāyas. This passage in the Vedanāsamyutta is a clear description of a close relationship between physical and mental *vedanā* which has a bearing on the status of the noble disciple (*ariyasāvaka*). These two sentences could perhaps provide a key to the understanding of this relationship in the Nikāyas. Moreover, they occur in a *sutta* which is significant from the soteriological point of view as well, as shown in the first chapter.

---

42 *so dve vedanā vediyati kāyika ca cetasika ca SN IV 208*

43 *so ekamp vedanam vediyati kāyikaṃ, na cetasikam SN IV 209*
A study of passages which have a bearing on the Sallasutta passage: the Kakacūpamasutta (MN 21)

These phrases may be unique in the Nikāyas, but the theme of this passage is an important one which is found echoed in many places. Leaving aside for a moment the question of the mental and physical aspects of vedanā, let us take a look at some of the passages which have a bearing on the Sallasutta passage.

The best known description in the Nikāyas of a person whose mind is unaffected by physical discomfort is found in the Kakacūpamasutta of the Majjhimanikkāya. The simile of the saw, from which this sutta takes its title, is also referred to in another Majjhimanikkāya sutta as we will see below, as well as in a verse of the Theragāthā.44 It comes at the end of the sutta:

Bhikkhus, even if bandits were to sever you savagely limb by limb with a two-handed saw, he who gave rise to a mind of hate towards them would not be carrying out my teaching.45

This is the classic statement of the case of one who experiences physical pain but is not affected by it at the mental level. Or, put in the terms of the Sallasutta, one could say that this person feels one vedanā, which is bodily, and he does not feel a mental vedanā.

The context of this dramatic statement is much more mundane than the statement itself. The sutta is about people who become upset over relatively minor matters. Firstly we hear of a bhikkhu who becomes angry and displeased and “raises a dispute”46 with others when they speak dispraise of the bhikkhunīs (nuns) with whom he associates. The Buddha is represented as telling this bhikkhu that he should abandon any desires and any thoughts based on the household life, and that he should remain with a mind of loving-kindness (mettacittā). The Buddha also tells this bhikkhu that he should practice in the same way if the bhikkhunīs with whom he has been associating are give a blow with the

---

44 Thag. 445
45 Ubbhotadhākāna ce pi bhikkhave kakacena corā ocarakā aṅgamatāgāni okanteyyum, tatra pi yo mano padisseyya: me so tena sāsakarā. MN I 129
46 PED for adhikarakam pi karoti.
hand, with a clod, with a stick, or with a knife. And he should practice in the same way if he himself is spoken to in a dispraising way, or if he is given a blow with the hand, with a clod, with a stick, or with a knife. In this last instance, the bhikkhu is in effect, in the spirit of the Sallasutta, being told that he should feel only one unpleasant *vedanā*, the bodily, and not the mental: his mind should be unaffected by physical discomfort.

Later in the sutta the Buddha tells the bhikkhus of the kinds of speech that they may have addressed to them, and he tells them what their reaction should be:

> When others address you, their speech may be timely or untimely; when others address you, their speech may be true or untrue; when others address you, their speech may be gentle or harsh; when others address you, their speech may be connected with good or with harm; when others address you, their speech may be spoken with a mind of loving-kindness or with inner hate. Herein, bhikkhus, you should train yourself thus: “Our minds will remain unaffected, and we shall utter no evil words; we shall abide compassionate for their welfare, with a mind of loving-kindness, without inner hate. ...”

And to further emphasise the point, the Buddha gives the simile of the saw, quoted above. After this, however, he returns to the topic of speech:

> “Bhikkhus, if you keep this advice on the simile of the saw constantly in mind, do you see any course of speech, trivial or gross, that you could not endure?”
> “No, venerable sir.”

The last verb in the Buddha’s phrase is familiar to us from passages that we looked at earlier in this chapter. *Adhivāsati*, meaning “he bears” or “he endures”, is used in conjunction with painful *vedanā* in the passage that we first noticed in the

---

47 Kālena và bhikkhave pare vadamānā vadeyyam akālena và; bhūteca và bhikkhave pare vadamānā vadeyyam abhuceca và, santaesa và bhikkhave pare vadamānā vadeyyam pharasaena và; atthasaṣṭhitena và bhikkhave pare vadamānā vadeyyam anathasaṣṭhitena và; mettacittā và bhikkhave pare vadamānā vadeyyam dosantarā và. Tatāpi kho bhikkhave evam sikkhatthāṃ: Na c’eva no citthaṃ vipariṇaṃ bhavosati na ca phāṇikaṃ vivaṃca nochhāressaṃ hitānuṃkampī ca viharissāmī. MN 126-27

48 *Inni ca tumhe bhikkhave kakacūpanaṃ ovādaṃ abhikkhaṇṇaṃ manosikāyādā, passadha no tumhe bhikkhave taṃ vacanapaṭhanā aṣaṇī vā tālāṇī vā yaṃ tumhe nādhivāseyyathāti. No b’caṇī bhante.* MN 1129
Sabbāsavasutta, and which recurs in many places in the Nikāyas. It is also found at significant junctures in the Mahāparinibbānasutta, again in connection with vedanā. Here, though, it is used in connection with speech which one hears which is in some way unpleasant. This provides an interesting connection with the other sutta of the Majjhimanikāya in which the simile of the saw appears, the Mahāhattipadopamasutta.

A study of passages which have a bearing on the Sallasutta passage: the Mahāhattipadopamasutta (MN 28)

This discourse is represented as being given not by the Buddha, but by one of his leading disciples, Sāriputta. In it we find the following passage:

So then, if others abuse, revile, scold, and harass a bhikkhu, he understands thus: “This painful vedanā born of ear-contact has arisen in me. This is dependent, not independent. Dependent on what? Dependent on contact.” Then he sees that contact is impermanent, that vedanā feeling is impermanent, that perception is impermanent, that formations are impermanent, and that consciousness is impermanent. And his mind ... acquires confidence, steadiness and decision.49

Again we have an instance of speech which is to be endured. Here, however, the analysis of this phenomenon is taken to another level. The bhikkhu of this passage understands that from the contact (samphassa) of this speech, an unpleasant vedanā has arisen. This is the crucial step; the speech itself is not analysed, but its effect on the hearer. The nature of this vedanā is then further examined: it is understood to be dependent upon contact. The bhikkhu then “sees” (passati) that the contact is impermanent and that the vedanā is impermanent. Thus one of the key notions of the Nikāyas, with which these texts characterize all phenomena, is brought in at this juncture in the bhikkhu’s thought process. It is not said, however, that he experiences this as a thought: rather, he “sees” (passati) these elements as impermanent. This verb implies a direct experience of the phenomenon, rather than a conceptualization of it. The other

49 Taṇṇī-āvuso bhikkhun pari akkossanti pariibbāsanti rosenti viheṣeanti, so evam pajānanti: Upāpanna kho me ayaṁ sotā-samphassa-jā dukkha-vedanā, sā ca kho pāiccā no appāiccā, kiṁ pāiccā: phassa pāiccā. So: phasso añiccā ti passati, vedanā añiccā ti passati, saṁkhāra añiccā ti passati, saṁkhāra añiccā ti passati, viññānaṁ añiccān ti passati. Tassa ... cittaṁ pakkhandati pasīdati santiṭṭhati adhimuccati. MN 185-86
mental aggregates (that is perception (saññā), the saññhabāras, and consciousness (viññāna)) are also seen as impermanent. As a result of this process, the bhikkhu’s mind becomes calm. Sāriputta then quotes the simile of the saw.

Using the simile of the Sallasutta, we could say that the bhikkhu of this sutta is pierced by only one arrow. There is the unpleasant vedanā which comes about from having heard offensive speech, but, by the use of wisdom, he is able to keep his mind calm, that is, there is no unpleasant mental vedanā. This interpretation, however, is only possible if we understand the vedanā which comes from the contact of hearing (sotasaṃphassajā vedanā) as being bodily vedanā.

Now the sense of hearing is normally understood to operate independently of the body, except of course for the involvement of the parts of the body which make up the ear. It is usually understood as being largely a mental process, especially the process of hearing words which are understood as offensive. That this process involves the body in some way can be explained by interpreting the vedanā that is associated with hearing as having an aspect that is related to the body.

On the topic of hearing offensive speech, we may recall that this is associated with the hearing of painful bodily vedanā in the passage from the Sabbāsvasutta which we looked at above:

he endures ill-spoken, unwelcome words and arisen bodily vedanā that are painful, racking, sharp, piercing, disagreeable, distressing, and menacing to life.\(^{50}\)

The “two vedanās” of the Sallasutta passage

The above passages from the Kakacūpamasutta and the Mahābhātthipadopamasutta show that the distinction that is made in the Sallasutta between a person who feels two vedanās when he or she feels a painful vedanā, that is, both bodily and mental, and a person who feels only the bodily vedanā on this occasion, echoes an important theme in the Nikāyas.

\(^{50}\) daruttānam durāgatānam vacanapathānam, uppannaṁ sārīrikānam vedanānam dukkhānam tippānam kharānam katukānam asitānam amanāpānam pānahrānam adhivāsakajātiko hoti. MN I 10
The association of this theme with the analysis of *vedanā* into its physical and mental aspects puts the discourse onto a different level. The simile of the saw is a striking image which is used by the Buddha to make the bhikkhus whom he is teaching realize the importance of not becoming upset by adverse events. The analysis of *vedanā* into mental and physical aspects, on the other hand, gives this process another dimension: now it can be understood without reference to the specific circumstances of the outside event.

The passage which follows these lines that we have been looking at from the Sallasutta are a description of a soteriological process in which *vedanā* plays a key role. This passage was pointed out in the first chapter. To briefly recapitulate, the noble disciple is described as not having aversion to unpleasant *vedanā* and thus eradicating the “underlying tendencies” (*anusaya*) associated with unpleasant *vedanā*, as not delighting in pleasant *vedanā* and thus eradicating the *anusayas* related to pleasant *vedanā*, and as understanding the impermanent nature of sensations which are neither pleasant nor unpleasant and thus eradicating the *anusayas* which are associated with them. In the context of this *sutta*, it is clear that in all of these cases the *vedanā* that is being referred to is *vedanā* at the physical level. *Vedanā* is here the first of the “barbs”, the physical barb, and the noble disciple does not experience the barb of mental *vedanā* which an ordinary person (*puthujjana*) does on this occasion. In this way he allows the soteriological process to take place.

Emphasis on bodily aspect of *vedanā* in the Ākāsasutta of the Vedanāsaṃyutta

The importance given to the physical aspect of *vedanā* in the Sallasutta may come as some surprise to a reader of these texts who is accustomed to the commentarial classification of *vedanā* as one of the four “immaterial” (*arūpino*) aggregates” which are contrasted with the aggregate of matter.

It is not, however, the only place in the Nikāyas where the “bodily” (*kāyika*) aspect of *vedanā* is emphasised. The twelfth *sutta* of the Vedanāsaṃyutta, the Ākāsasutta, is of great interest in this respect. The *sutta* begins with a simile: just as various types of winds blow in the sky, from various directions, of various strengths, etc., so various
types of vedanā, that is pleasant vedanā, painful vedanā, and vedanā which is neither pleasant nor painful, arise in this body (imasmīṃ kāyasmin). This simile, which is given first in prose, is then given again in verse. The wording for our key terms is almost identical:

tathevimasmīṃ pi kāyasmin, samuppajjati vedanā
sukhadukkhasamuppatti, adukkhasukkhā ca yā.  

So again we are told that vedanā arises “in this body” (imasmīṃ pi kāyasmin).

These statements are then followed by four lines of verse which conclude the sutta, and which also occur as the final lines of another sutta of the Vedanāsamyutta, the Pahānenasutta. The last two lines we also find as the final lines of the Daṭṭhabbenasutta of the Vedanāsamyutta. We have already examined these lines in the first chapter, because they put great emphasis on the role of vedanā in the soteriological process. The wise person (pañcika) is said to have full comprehension of (parijñā) all vedanās, and, having fully understood vedanā (so vedanā pariṇāya), to be free from the āsava. He is called “one who has knowledge” (vedagu), and at death he does not return to the finite world (sārikha).

There are hardly any statements in the Nikāyas which give as much importance to vedanā in the description of a soteriological process as these which are found here, in this sutta which also contains one of the clearest statements of the physical aspect of vedanā.

The thirteenth sutta of the Vedanāsamyutta, also called the Ākāsasutta, repeats the prose section of the preceding sutta, so that the information that this sutta gives is that “vedanās arise in this body”. The fourteenth sutta of the collection, the Āgarasutta, also gives this information, but it uses a different simile to illustrate the point. Here, the

-----

51 imasmīṃ kāyasmin vividhā vedanā uppajjanti, sukhā pi vedanā, dukkhā pi vedanā, adukkhasukkhā pi vedanā uppajjanti. SN IV 218
52 SN IV 218
53 SN IV 206
54 SN IV 207
55 SN IV 219
various \textit{vedanā} which arise in the body are compared to the various visitors who come to
stay at a rest house: they may come from different directions, and they may be of
various castes, nobles (\textit{khattiya}s), brāhmans, etc. The central concern of these two \textit{suttas}
is therefore simply to highlight the fact that \textit{vedanā} arises in the body. The soteriological
dimension of the first Ākāśasutta is not found in these \textit{suttas}.

Emphasis on bodily aspect of \textit{vedanā} in the Gelaṇṇasutta of the Vedanāsaṁyutta

There is another \textit{sutta} in the Vedanāsaṁyutta which gives some information on the
relationship between \textit{vedanā} and the body. This is the seventh \textit{sutta} of the collection, the
Gelaṇṇasutta. The first part of the \textit{sutta} is concerned with describing a bhikkhu who is
aware (\textit{sato}) and who has complete understanding (\textit{sampajñā}). These are key terms
from the description of the practice of the establishing of mindfulness (\textit{satipaṭṭhāna}).
The remainder of the \textit{sutta} presupposes that the bhikkhu is possessed of these qualities.
The \textit{sutta} continues,

Now, bhikkhus, as that bhikkhu dwells aware, with complete understanding,
earnest, ardent, strenuous, there arises in him \textit{vedanā} that is pleasant, and he thus
understands: "There is arisen in me this pleasant \textit{vedanā}. Now that is dependent,
not without cause. Dependent on what? Dependent on this very body."

The relationship between \textit{vedanā} and the body is given here in somewhat different terms
than it is in the Ākāśasutta. \textit{Vedanā} is here described as being dependent (\textit{paṭicca}) upon
the body. In this section pleasant \textit{vedanā} is being discussed. Further on in the \textit{sutta} there
is a parallel section dealing with painful \textit{vedanā} and one dealing with \textit{vedanā} which is
neither pleasant nor painful. The ramifications of \textit{vedanā} being dependent on the body
are now taken up:

\footnote{\textit{Ṭassa ce bhikkhave bhikkhuno evam satassa sampajñānassa appamattassa ātāpino paṭhitassā viharato
uppajjithi sukhā vedanā, so evam pājānti. Uppanā kho me evaṃ sukhā vedanā, sā ca kho paṭicca no
apaṭicca, kim paṭicca, imaṃ eva kāyaṃ paṭicca.} SN IV 211}
“Now this body is impermanent, compounded, arisen owing to something. It is owing to this impermanent body, which has so arisen, that pleasant vedanā has arisen as a consequence, and how can that be permanent?”

Again, as we have seen in many places in the Nikāyas, vedanā is associated with the key notion of impermanence. This leads to the bhikkhu taking up a specific practice for which the body and vedanā are the base. This leads in turn to the abandoning of the “underlying tendencies” (anusaya) in relation to the body and to vedanā.

Thus he dwells contemplating impermanence in body and pleasant vedanā, he dwells contemplating their transience, their waning, their ceasing, the giving of them up. As he thus dwells contemplating impermanence in body and pleasant vedanā, contemplating their transience ... the underlying tendency to lust for body and pleasant vedanā is abandoned.

In the Chachakkasutta of the Majjhimanikāya, one who abandons the anusayas is said to make an end of suffering. So we have here a very strong emphasis on vedanā and its relation to the body in the context of the description of a soteriological process.

This sutta has parallels with passages from other suttas in the Nikāyas, but there are also important aspects in which it is unique. The fact that it describes vedanā as being dependent (paticca) on the body is particularly noteworthy. In the dependent origination sequence, vedanā is said to be dependent—and a closely related word, paccaya, is used—on contact (phassa). One of the passages from the Mahāvatthipadopamasutta that we looked at above is based on this vedanā-phassa link, and its similarity to and difference from our Gelaṁnasutta passage are striking. Let us look at them side by side. Here is the passage from the Gelaṁnasutta:

---

57 ayam kho pana kāyo anicco saŋkhato paticca samuppanno, aniccam kho pana saṅkhatam paticca samuppannoṁ kāyaṁ paticca uppāṇāṁ sukkhā vedanā kuto nissā bhavissatī. SN IV 211
58 So kāye ca sukkhāya ca vedanāya aniccānupassī viharatī, vayānupassī viharatī, virāgānupassī viharatī, nirodhaṁ upassī viharatī, paṭṭisāgāṇupassī viharatī, tassa kāye ca sukkhāya ca vedanāya aniccānupassino viharato vayānupassino viharato virāgānupassino viharato nirodhaṁ upassino viharato paṭṭisāgāṇupassī viharato yo kāye ca sukkhāya ca vedanāya rāgānusayo so pahiyati. SN IV 211-12.
59 dukkhaṁ antakaro bhavissati' MN III 286
There is arisen in me this pleasant vedanā. Now that is dependent, not without cause. Dependent on what? Dependent on this very body. Now this body is impermanent.\textsuperscript{60}

And now those from the Mahāhatthipadopamasutta:

he understands thus: “This painful feeling born of ear-contact has arisen in me. This is dependent, not independent. Dependent on what? Dependent on contact.” Then he sees that contact is impermanent, that feeling is impermanent ...

\textsuperscript{61}

The second example forms part of a brief narrative: we are given the hypothetical situation of a bhikkhu who is insulted, and we are shown the best way for him to deal with this. In the Gelaññasutta, on the other hand, the situation is not specified; the teachings here apply universally: we are shown how to make use of pleasant, painful, and neither-pleasant-nor-painful vedanā to abandon “underlying tendencies” (anusaya). And we are told that the way to do this is firstly by understanding the relationship of vedanā with the body.

The significance of the phrase “\textit{So kāyapariyāntikāṃ vedanāṃ vediyamāno ...}” in the Gelaññasutta

The bodily aspect of vedanā is referred to again in the Gelaññasutta. The following Pali phrase appears in the concluding paragraphs:

\textit{So kāyapariyāntikāṃ vedanāṃ vediyamāno Kāyapariyāntikāṃ vedanāṃ vediyāmīti pājanātī.} SN IV 213

This phrase has elicited varying responses from translators over the years. Let us briefly survey their translations. (Some of these translations are of this phrase as it appears in

\textsuperscript{60} Uppanā kho me ayaṃ sukhā vedanā, sā ca kho paṭicca no apatiṭṭa, kiṃ paṭicca, imaṃ eva kāyaṃ paṭicca, ayaṃ kho pana kāyo anicco... SN IV 211

\textsuperscript{61} so evaṃ pājanātī: Uppanā kho me ayaṃ sota-samphassajā dukkhā vedanā, sā ca kho paṭicca no appaṭicca, kiṃ paṭicca: phassu ayaṃ paṭicca. So: phasso anicco ti passati, vedanā aniccā ti passati, saṅkhāra aniccā ti passati, saṅkhāra... viññāṇam... MN I 185-86.
other *suttas*). C.A.F. Rhys Davids arrived at the following, though it is difficult to see how she did so:

When he feels a feeling that his powers have reached their limit, he knows that he feels such a feeling.  

F.L. Woodward translated this phrase a number of times. On the earlier occasions he seems to have been influenced by C.A.F. Rhys Davids’ interpretation, giving, for example:

When he feels a feeling that his bodily endurance has reached its limit, he knows that he so feels.

On the last occasion that he translated it, however, he gives:

When he feels a feeling limited by body, he knows that he so feels.

He adds a footnote to this translation, stating that he is “not sure” that his earlier translation is right. He refers in this footnote to the Pali commentary on this text, which explains *kāyapariyāntikam* as *kāyaparicchinnam*, which Woodward translates as “confined to the limits of the body ...”

The earlier translations seem to belong to a type which K.R. Norman refers to as “intuitive” translations. The translators have chosen their renderings because they believed that they have understood the entire passage, without looking closely enough at the individual words and phrases. In this case they seem to have been influenced by the fact that a few lines further on, the state after death (*kāyassa bhedā uddham*) of the bhikkhu, who is the subject of this passage, is described. The phrase *kāyapariyāntikam vedanam*, however, is not related to death or dying. The word *pariyantika* is given in the

---

PED as a term which is used at the end of compounds, meaning “ending in, bounded or limited by”. In Sanskrit the cognate word paryanta seems to be used in a similar sense: Monier-Williams gives “bounded by”, “extending as far as”.

The translation that Woodward later arrived at appears, therefore, to be closer to what the meaning of the Pali may be. R. Gombrich in a recent article paraphrases this phrase as “... if he has a sensation co-extensive with his body ..., he feels it as such...”. It seems clear that the phrase kāyaparīyantikā vedanā is giving a great deal of emphasis to the bodily aspect of vedanā. Vedanā is here being identified with the body.

There are, however, two translations which have appeared since Woodward revised his original opinion on this phrase which seem to revert to the older, inaccurate interpretation. Naṇamoli, whose translation of this passage was published after his death from the draft that he left, gives:

> When he feels feeling of the body ending, he understands: “I feel feeling of the body ending.”

And Nyanaponika, in 1983, gives, in a similar vein:

> When having painful feelings endangering the body, he knows: “I have painful feelings endangering the body.”

The translators who failed to arrive at a correct translation of this phrase were no doubt influenced by the context in which we find it; the text which follows this phrase a little later in the passage is concerned with what happens after death (kāyassa bheda). It could also be, however, that they were reluctant to identify vedanā with the body because they were influenced by the commentarial interpretation of vedanā as one of the formless aggregates (arūpino khandhā).

---

68 Naṇamoli, ed. Phra Khantiyalo, A Treasury of the Buddha’s Discourses from the Majjhima-nikaya (Middle Collection), vol.ii, Wisemans Ferry, N.S.W., Wat Buddha-Dhamma, no date, p.64.
Not all of the translations of the phrase kāyapariyantikām vedaṇānām that we have looked at here are taken from translations of the Gālāṇīsutta of the Vedanāsaṃyutta. This phrase appears in a number of other places in the Nikāyas. The distribution of these appearances is of considerable interest. It occurs once in the Majjhimanikāya,70 once in the Aṅguttaranikāya,71 and four times in the Saṃyuttanikāya. Within the Saṃyuttanikāya, it appears firstly in the Nidānasamīyutta,72 the main section of the second volume, devoted to texts dealing with the schema of dependent origination (paṭiccasamuppāda); then in the Khandhasamīyutta,73 the main section of the third volume, devoted to texts dealing with the five aggregates; then in the fourth volume, in the Vedāṅgasaṃyutta74; and finally in the fifth volume, the Mahāvagga,75 in a section with texts on mindfulness of in-breathing and out-breathing (ānāpānasati). The first volume of the Saṃyuttanikāya, from which this phrase is absent, is largely made up of verse suttas, which do not lend themselves easily to analysis of these kinds of terms. The phrase is also absent from the Dīghanikāya, where we find texts of a rather different nature to those in the three other principal Nikāyas. Thus we find this phrase represented in most of the major groups of texts in the Nikāyas, and within the Saṃyuttanikāya, where the texts are arranged according to their subject matter, we find it in each major subdivision except for the verse collection. It is possible that the fact that this phrase is distributed in such a manner points to it being considered of some significance by the compilers of these texts. In truth, though, we know little about the process by which these texts were compiled, and suggestions like this must necessarily remain speculative.

This phrase, which puts so much emphasis on the connection of vedaṇā with the body, is embedded in the same passage on each of its appearances, and this passage is of great soteriological significance. This passage, which was examined in detail in the first chapter, puts emphasis on the understanding of the impermanent (aniccā) nature of vedaṇā, and of the importance of remaining detached (visāmyutto) from vedaṇā. In the context of the important role of vedaṇā in the soteriological process described here, the phrase on the bodily nature of vedaṇā takes on even greater significance. And in the

70 MN II 244-5
71 AN II 198
72 SN I 82-83
73 SN II 126
74 SN IV 213
75 SN V 319
Gelaniṇāsutta of the Vedanāsamīyutta, as we saw above, this passage follows on from one which explains how vedanā is intimately connected with the body.

Emphasis on bodily aspect of vedanā in the Dīghanakhasutta

Another sutta which was commented upon in the first chapter of this thesis in order to highlight the emphasis which is put on vedanā in a description of a soteriological process is also of some interest in terms of our understanding of the relationship between vedanā and the body as represented in these texts. This is the Dīghanakhasutta of the Majjhimanikāya. In this sutta we find the following description of the body:

Now, Aggivessana, this body made of material form, consisting of the four great elements, procreated by a mother and father, and built up out of boiled rice and porridge, is subject to impermanence, to being worn and rubbed away, to dissolution and disintegration.79

A passage very similar to this one is used in a number of places in the Nikāyas to explain the term which refers to the body in extended metaphors. For example, earlier on in the Majjhimanikāya, we find the term “ant-hill” (vammiṭṭa) used to refer to the body, and it is explained in the following manner:

Bhikkhu, the ant-hill is a symbol for this body, consisting of the four great elements, procreated by a mother and father, built up out of boiled rice and porridge, and subject to impermanence, to being worn and rubbed away, to dissolution and disintegration.77

In other metaphors, the terms “boil”,78 “town”,79 and “chariot”80 are explained in exactly the same way. In other contexts as well, we find this passage used when reference is

76 Ayaṃ kho pan’Aggivessana kāyo rūpī cātummahābhūtiko mātāpettikasambhavo odanakumarassapaccayo aniccucchādana-parimaddana-bhedana-viddhaṃsanadhhammo. MN I 1500
77 Vammiṭṭa ti kho bhikkhu imassetam cātummahābhūtikassa kāyasassaddhiyacanam mātāpettikasambhavasssa odanakumarassapaccayasssa aniccucchādana-parimaddana-bhedana-viddhaṃsanadhhammassa. MN I 144
78 SN IV 83 and AN IV 386
79 SN IV 194
80 SN IV 292
made to the body.\textsuperscript{81} This passage is, therefore, a kind of standard, paradigmatic description of the body in the Nikāyas.

The passage in the Dīghanakhasutta continues in the following manner:

It should be regarded as impermanent, as suffering, as a disease, as a tumour, as a dart, as a calamity, as an affliction, as alien, as disintegrating, as void, as not self.\textsuperscript{82}

There follows a brief passage which states that if one views the body in the terms with which it is described here, desire towards the body will be abandoned. Immediately after this comes a blunt statement of the three vedanās:

There are these three vedanās, Aggivessana, pleasant vedanā, unpleasant vedanā, and vedanā which is neither pleasant nor unpleasant.\textsuperscript{83}

There is no preparation for this sudden change of topic. This same phrase, or phrases almost identical with it, occurs quite a number of times in the Nikāyas. When it does occur, it is either the subject matter of the entire sutta, as in many of the suttas of the Vedaanāsamyutta;\textsuperscript{84} or it is related to the broader context of the sutta, as for example, in discussion of the place of vedanā in the dependent origination schema (patīcesamuppāda)\textsuperscript{85}, or it is in a sutta which is concerned with enumerating various types of phenomena (dhamma), as in the Saṅgītisutta and the Dasuttarasutta of the last volume of the Dīghanikāya.\textsuperscript{86} Finding it suddenly cropping up as it does here without any preparation is quite unusual.

What we have in effect is a stark juxtaposition of a significant passage on the body with a significant passage on vedanā. For, as we have seen in the first chapter, the theme of vedanā is now developed: vedanā plays a central role in a description of a soteriological

\textsuperscript{81} DN I 176, MN II 17, SN V 369-70
\textsuperscript{82} anticato dukkhato rogato gaṇḍato sallato aghato abādhato parato palokato saṅkhato anattato samanupassitabbo. MN I 500
\textsuperscript{83} Tissa kha imā Aggivessana vedanā: sukhā vedanā dukkhā vedanā adukkhamesukhā vedanā. MN I 500
\textsuperscript{84} See SN IV 204, ff.
\textsuperscript{85} SN II 53 and SN II 99
\textsuperscript{86} DN III 216 and 275
practice, so much so that the *sutta* has an alternative title in the commentarial literature, as the Vedaṇāpariggahanasutta, the Discourse on the Grasping of Vedaṇā. A significant feature of this passage is the emphasis on the impermanent nature of vedaṇā:

Pleasant vedaṇā, Aggivessana, is impermanent, conditioned, dependently arisen, subject to destruction, vanishing, fading away and ceasing.  

Even though there is no explicit link made in the jump from a description of the nature of the body to that of the nature of vedaṇā, there is an important thematic link between these descriptions. That is the emphasis in both descriptions on impermanence, one of the key concepts of the Nikāyas. The body is “subject to impermanence, to being worn and rubbed away, to dissolution and disintegration” (*aniccucchedana-parimaddana-bhedana-viddhampanadhammo*). It “should be regarded as impermanent...” (*aniccato... samanupassitabbo*).

Bearing this connection in mind, and bearing in mind the juxtaposition of these two significant passages, one is tempted to conclude that the bodily aspect of vedaṇā is being emphasised in this *sutta*. This is not, however, stated explicitly, so any conclusions on this matter must remain conjectural.

Emphasis on bodily aspect of vedaṇā in the Mahātānhaṅsaṅkhayasutta

There is another *sutta* in the Majjhimanikāya which we have seen as giving an important role to vedaṇā in a description of a soteriological process, and which also implies a connection between the body and vedaṇā. This is the Mahātānhaṅsaṅkhayasutta. The relevant passage begins in this manner:

When he has seen a material shape through the eye, he does not feel attraction for agreeable material shapes, he does not feel repugnance for disagreeable material shapes; and he dwells with mindfulness aroused as to the body, with a mind that is unlimited; and he comprehends that freedom of mind and that freedom through

---

87, *Sukhā pi kho Aaggivessana vedaṇā aniccā saṅkhathā paticcasamuppannā khayadhammā vayadhammā virāgadhammā nirodhadhammā* (MN 1500)
intuitive wisdom as they really are, whereby those evil unskilled states of his are stopped without remainder. Having abandoned thus compliance and antipathy, whatever vedanā he feels—pleasant or painful or neither painful nor pleasant—he does not delight in that vedanā, does not welcome it and persist in cleaving to it.88

Some key terms for our discussion can be extracted from this passage, without, I hope, distorting the overall sense of the passage. Let us look at two of the phrases from this passage side by side. Firstly:

he dwells with mindfulness aroused as to the body... (So... upāṭṭhitakāyatasati ca viharati ... MN I 270)

and then:

... whatever vedanā he feels—pleasant or painful or neither painful nor pleasant— he does not delight in that vedanā, does not welcome it and persist in cleaving to it. (... yam kaści vedanāṁ vedeti sukham vā dukkham vā adukkhamasukham vā, so tāṁ vedanāṁ nābhīndatati nābhīvatati nāyāhosāya tiṭṭhati. MN I 270)

The practice which leads to the stage at which the person described in this passage is able to remain unaffected by vedanā which is pleasant, painful or neither—pleasant nor—painful is a practice which in part at least is based on the body. This suggests that the bodily aspect of vedanā may have a role to play in the process described in this passage.

Vedanā exemplifies the link between mind and body in the Nikāyas

The interest that we find in the Nikāyas in pointing out the physical and mental aspects of vedanā echoes a broader theme. In a number of places, we find mental and physical aspects of various phenomena. The mind and the body are both given importance in the description of a number of practices. Sometimes we find this theme related in some way

88 So cakkhuno rūpaṁ dīsva pīyārūpe rūpe na sārajati, appiyyārūpe rūpe na byāpaśijati, upāṭṭhitakāyasati ca viharati appenañcateto, taṁ-ca cetovimuttim paṭṭhāvimuttim yathābhūtaṁ pañānti yathā aṁsa te pāpakā akusalā dhammā aparisesā nirujjhanti. So evaṁ anurodhavirodhaviippatīno yaṁ kaści vedanāṁ vedeti, sukham vā dukkham vā adukkhamasukham vā, so tāṁ vedanāṁ nābhīndatati nābhīvatati nāyāhosāya tiṭṭhati. MN I 270
to the concept of *vedanā*. This theme seems to have presented some difficulties to the early commentators on these texts, for we find a certain amount of inconsistency in their treatment of it. The following passage appears in several places in each of the four principal Nikāyas:

When he is glad, joy is born in him; in one who is joyous, the body becomes tranquil; one whose body is tranquil feels pleasure; in one who feels pleasure, the mind becomes concentrated.\(^9\)

Gethin has made the following observations on this passage:

It is perhaps of some interest that *passaddhi* ["tranquillity"] is described in [this] ancient formula as being mediated through the body... Some form of movement from mind to body and back again is ... quite clearly indicated in the ancient formula concerned with the dynamics of *pīti* ["joy"] and *passaddhi* ["tranquillity"]:\(^9\)

It is indeed a remarkable description of a process in which mental and physical events both play important roles and interact with each other in important ways. Moreover, a term related to *vedanā* plays a role in this process. The phrase *sukham vedeti* ("he feels pleasure") uses a verb which is cognate with the term *vedanā*. Extrapolating from the mental and physical aspects of *vedanā* that we have noticed in the above discussion, we can interpret the phrase *sukham vedeti* ("he feels pleasure") as a link between the body (*kāya*) of the preceding phrase ("the body becomes tranquil," *kāya passambhati*) and the mind (*citta*) of the phrase which follows ("in one who feels pleasure, the mind becomes concentrated," *sukhino cittam samādhiyati*).

The commentaries, however, have different views on the meaning of this passage. The commentaries on the Dīghanikāya take *kāya* in this passage to mean the mind. They

---

\(^{9}\) *pamuditassa pīti jāyati, pītanānaṃ kāya passambhati, passaddhakāya sukham vedeti, sukhino cittam samādhiyati*. DN I 73, DN III 241, 288; MN I 37, 283; SN IV 78-79, 351-58; SN V 156, 398; AN I 243-4; AN III 21-23, 285-87; AN V 329-34

understand the term kāya as a way of saying nāmakāya, that is, in the terms of the commentaries, the four immaterial aggregates. Other commentaries, however, are less unequivocal. The commentary on this passage as it appears in the Majjhimanikāya simply glosses kāya as kāya. This gives us little further information on how this commentary wants us to understand the term. It is possible that we are being asked to take kāya at face value, as meaning simply the physical body.

On its first appearance in the Aṅguttaranikāya, the commentary on that text has another interpretation of this passage: “the body becomes tranquil” [means] the group of the mind (nāmakāya) and the group of matter (rūpakāya) are without agitation”. Interestingly, here the commentary seems to be taking kāya as meaning mind and body together, using its customary terminology of nāmakāya for the four immaterial aggregates and rūpakāya for the aggregate of matter, that is, the body. Later on in the Aṅguttaranikāya commentary, however, commenting on this same phrase, we find kāya glossed as nāmakāya only, that is, the group of mental aggregates.

When this passage appears in the Saṃyuttanikāya, as it does in numerous places, the commentary is silent on the term kāya. The term “whose body is tranquil” (passaddhakāyo), does, however, occur in a verse passage in the Mārasaṃyutta of the first volume of the Saṃyuttanikāya. And here we find yet another explanation of this term: “Whose body is tranquil” [means] whose body is tranquil because of the tranquillising of the body of in- and out-breathing by the fourth jhāna”. This is related to another explanation of kāya that we find in the Nikāyas. In the Cūladēdallāsutta of the Majjhimanikāya, the lay disciple Visākha asks the bhikkhuni Dhammadinnā the meaning of the term kāyasankhāra (“sankhāra of the body”). She tells him that it means in- and out-breathing (assāsapassāsā). When he asks the reason that this definition is given, she says that it is because in- and out-breathing is bodily (kāyika), that these phenomena are “bound up with the body” (ete dhammā kāyapatibaddha). So the commentary on the

91 Sv I 217 on DN I 73 nāmakāya passambhāti and Sv III 1032 on DN III 241 kāyoti nāmakāyo patispambhāti.
92 kāyo passambhāti kāyo passaddho hoti vāpasantadatho Ps I 174 on MN I 37
93 kāyo passambhāti nāmakāyopi rūpakāyopi vigatadaratho hoti Mp II 357 on AN I 243
94 kāyoti nāmakāyo Mp III 230 on AN III 21
95 SN I 126
96 passaddhakāyoti catutthajhānena assāsapassāsakāyassa passaddhātā passaddhakāyo Spk I :87
97 MN I 301
Samyuttanikāya appears not to take kāya in the term passaddhakāya to be the mental body, as some of the other commentaries do; it seems to understands kāya here as the physical body.

This survey of the commentarial interpretations of the term passaddhakāya reveals some tensions. They seem to stem from a reluctance to take the term kāya in this context at face value.

It is “one whose body is tranquil” (passaddhakāya) who “feels pleasure” (sukham vedeti). This allows us to speculate that the pleasure spoken of here may be related to the body. The text continues: “in one who feels pleasure, the mind becomes concentrated” (sukhino cittaṃ samādhiyati). Here, we may be tempted to speculate that the pleasure involved here is of a mental nature. Or we could take the two phrases together and conclude that “pleasure” (or “happiness”) in this context is of both a mental and a physical nature. The fact that the verb vedeti, related to vedanā, is used here, and that vedanā is shown in many places in the Nikāyas to have both a physical and a mental aspect, supports this third interpretation.

The commentaries are divided in their interpretation of the nature of pleasure in this context. The Dīghanikāya commentary and the Aṅguttaranikāya commentary say that it is both bodily and mental. The Majjhimanikāya commentary, on the other hand, specifies that “pleasure” in this passage is “mental pleasure”. It is curious to note that it is the Majjhimanikāya commentary, which does not define kāya in this passage as nāmakkāya (mental group), which nevertheless represents “pleasure” only in mental terms. And it is the Dīghanikāya commentary, which sees kāya as being a mental phenomenon (nāmakāya), which explains “pleasure” as being both bodily and mental (kāyikampi cetasikampi). This seems to be further evidence of the confusion in the minds of the commentators on these questions.

98 Sv I 217 on DN I 73: sukhāṃ vedetāti kāyikampi cetasikampi sukhāṃ vedeti. Mp II 357 on AN I 243: sukhāṃ vedīyati kāyikacetasikasukhāṃ vediyati
99 (Ps I 174 on MN I 37: passaddhakāyo sukhanti evam vāpasantakāyadaratho cetasikamp sukhāṃ paṭisāmyvedeti
Some kind of relationship between the mind and the body is described in other places in the Nikāyas as well, and examining these passages can help to put into perspective the question of the mental and bodily aspects of vedanā. The following passage bears some strong resemblances with the passage which we have just been looking at, and it too appears at numerous places in the Nikāyas:

Tireless energy, o brahman, was aroused in me and unremitting mindfulness was established, my body was tranquil and untroubled, my mind concentrated and unified.\textsuperscript{100}

We find this passage in all of the Nikāyas except for the Dīghanikāya, and it occurs in several places in the Majjhimanikāya and the Aṅguttaranikāya. We also find it in the Itivuttaka.\textsuperscript{101} As with the previous passage, if we read kāya as the physical body here, the interaction between physical and mental events can be seen to be of great importance in this description of a spiritual practice. Some of the terms in this passage bear a very close resemblance to those in the passage examined above. Yet when we turn to the commentaries, we find that they explain these words quite differently. The term passaddho kāyo ("my body was tranquil") is very nearly the same as the compound passaddhakāyo found in the first passage. Yet the commentary on the Majjhimanikāya gives an explanation for it which is very different to that given by the commentaries for the term passaddho kāyo. The passage from the Majjhimanikāya commentary is as follows:

"The body is tranquil" (means) by the production of tranquillity of mind and body, my body too was tranquil. In this connection, when the mind-body (nāma-kāya) is tranquil the material-body (rūpa-kāya) is also tranquil, therefore without having made a distinction between the mind-body and the material-body, the phrase "the body is tranquil" is used.\textsuperscript{102}

\textsuperscript{100} Ānaddham kho pana me brāhmaṇaṃ viirtyaṃ bhavissati asailinaṃ upatthitaṃ sati asamutthāṃ passaddho kāyo asaridho samihitaṃ cittam ekaggati.

\textsuperscript{101} MN I 21, 117, 186, 189; SN IV 125; AN I 48, 282, AN II 14, AN IV 176; Itivuttaka, p.119-20

\textsuperscript{102} passaddho kāyo ti kāyacittappassaddhisambhavena kāyopi me passaddho ahosi, tattha yasmi nāmakāye passaddhe rūpakāyo passaddho yevam boti, tasmā "nāmakāyo rūpakāyo" ti avisesetvāva "passaddho kāyo" ti vuttam. Ps I 124 on MN I 21.
This commentary is making full use of the possibility of interpreting kāya as both a mental and a physical phenomenon.

The Aṅguttaranikāya commentary gives another interpretation of passaddho kāyo, which is different again from any of the various explanations which the commentaries give for passaddhakāya:

"The body is tranquil" (means) the mental group and the body born of action is tranquil, has its agitation calmed.\(^{103}\)

Here, kāya, besides being described as the group of mental aggregates, is also called the “body born of action” (karajakāya), a term which we have not encountered in our examinations of the traditional exegeses of kāya. Whether this term is referring to a physical or a mental phenomenon is not immediately clear. In the Dīghanikāya commentary, however, it is clearly shown to be the physical body, firstly in a passage which relates it to the description of the body as “made of material form, consisting of the four great elements, procreated by a mother and father, and built up out of boiled rice and porridge”, and secondly in a passage which describes it as being the “four great elements”.\(^{104}\) The commentary on passaddho kāyo in the Itivuttaka is practically identical with this one from the Aṅguttaranikāya commentary.

So again we see here the commentaries interpreting the term kāya as both a physical and a mental phenomenon. The variety of commentarial interpretations of the term kāya in the phrases passaddhakāya and passaddho kāyo is of great interest in assessing the commentators’ views on how the Nikāya texts see the relationship between the mind and the body. Some of the commentaries do not allow kāya any physical aspect. When they do interpret kāya as being both physical and mental, they use a wide variety of expressions to describe this dual aspect.

\(^{103}\) passaddho kāyoti nāmakāyo ca karajakāyo ca passaddho vūpasantaratho. Mp II 243 on AN I 148.

\(^{104}\) Sv III 722 on DN II 278: vaṭṭhu nāma karajakāyo, yam sandhāya vuttaṁ -- "idaṁ ca pana me viññānam ettha sitam ettha patibaddhan". This is a reference to DN I 76 where consciousness is said to be bound to the body which is rūpā nāma mahābhūtāni upadāpāñca ti (sic).

Sv III 764 on DN II 291: karajakāyo nāma cattāri mahābhūtāni upādāpāñce ti (sic).
Mental and physical aspects of descriptions of the "factor of awakening of tranquillity" 
(*passaddhisambojjhango*)

We come away from our survey of the commentaries' opinions on the terms 
*passaddhakāya* and *passaddho kāyo* somewhat perplexed by their contradictions and 
their efforts to make what could appear to be a simple matter appear rather complicated. 
When we look into the Nikāyas, however, for more information on these terms, the 
situation seems to be somewhat clearer. The term *passaddhi* ("tranquillity"), a noun 
related to the perfect past participle *passadīha*, is found in a series known as the seven 
factors of awakening (*bojhanga*). R. Gethin has commented on the significance of this 
series:

> A statement to the effect that the Buddhist path consists essentially in the 
> abandoning of the five hindrances, the development of the establishings of 
> mindfulness and subsequent development of the awakening-factors is found 
> several times in the Nikāyas: AN V 194-5 (cf. DN II 83 = III 101 = SN V 161; 
> AN III 387; Nett 94).¹⁰⁵

At a number of places we find a passage which describes the factors being developed in 
a sequential manner. The term tranquillity is preceded by "joy" (*pīṭh*) and is followed by 
"concentration" (*samādhi*). We can note in passing that this part of the series bears a 
close resemblance to the passage which we examined at the beginning of this section, 
which gives these terms in the following form:

joy (*pīṭh*) is born in him; in one who is joyous, the body becomes tranquil 
(*passambhati*); one whose body is tranquil feels pleasure; in one who feels 
pleasure, the mind becomes concentrated (*samādhiyati*).¹⁰⁶

In a number of *suttas* which deal with the seven factors of awakening we find the 
following passage:

¹⁰⁶ *pīṭh jayati, pitimannaśa kāyo passambhati, passaddhakāyo sukham vedeti, sukhino cittaṃ samādhiyati.* 
DN I 73, etc.
Of one who is joyous body is tranquil and mind is tranquil. Now, bhikkhus, when a bhikkhu who is joyous has body and mind tranquillized, then it is that the limb of wisdom which is tranquillity is established in him. ... Happy is he whose body is tranquillized. Of him that is happy the mind is concentrated.\textsuperscript{107}

Here we have a clear statement of the involvement of both mind and body in this process. Equally as clear are other statements found in the Bojjhangasamyutta of the Samyuttanikāya. The following passage occurs three times:

There are, bhikkhus, tranquillity of body and tranquillity of mind. Systematic attention thereto, if made much of, is this food for the arising of the limb of wisdom which is tranquillity if not yet arisen, or for its cultivation and fulfilment if already arisen.\textsuperscript{108}

Another passage from the Bojjhaṅgasamīyutta gives a similar impression:

Now, bhikkhus, tranquillity of body, that is a limb of wisdom that is tranquillity. Tranquillity of mind, that also is a limb of wisdom that is tranquillity.\textsuperscript{109}

The calming of the body and the mind is also one of the benefits of the conscientious practice of mindfulness of the body (kāyagatā sati) mentioned in the Aṅguttaraṇīkāya:

Bhikkhus, if one thing be practised and made much of, body is calmed, mind is calmed... What one thing? It is mindfulness centred on the body.\textsuperscript{110}

This context is particularly significant because the practice of mindfulness of the body is explicitly concerned with the physical body—the term kāya in kāyagatā sati is never

\textsuperscript{107} Pitimassā kāyo pi passambhāti, cittam pi passambhāti. Yasmin samaye bhikkhave bhikkhuno pitimassā kāyo pi passambhāti cittam pi passambhāti, passaddhisambojjhāṅgo tasmin samaye bhikkhuno ārato hoti. ... passaddhikāyassa sukhāha hoti, sukhino cittāṁ samudhiyati. SN V 68, cf. 332 and 338. MN III 86

\textsuperscript{108} Atthi bhikkhave kāyapassaddhi cittapassaddhi, tattha yonisomanasikāraḥ bhavakaro ayam abhūr anuppanassā vā passaddhisambojjhaṅgassā uppādaẏa uppannassā vā passaddhisambojjhaṅgassā bhavatāya paripāryā. SN V 66, 104 & 107

\textsuperscript{109} Yad api bhikkhave kāyapassaddhi tad api passaddhisambojjhaṅgo yad api bhikkhave cittapassaddhi tad api passaddhisambojjhaṅgo. SN V 111.

\textsuperscript{110} Ekadhamme bhikkhave bhāvite bhāvike kāyo pi passambhāti cittāṁ pi passambhāti ... Katamasmīṁ ekadhamme? Kāyagatā-satiyā. AN I 43
interpreted as the mental group (nāmakāya). From the context of these suttras there is no reason to think that anything other than the physical body is meant by kāya and anything other than the mind is meant by citta.

Once again, though, the commentaries give contradictory interpretations of these passages. The commentary on the Aṅguttaranikāya passage\textsuperscript{111} just quoted glosses kāya in the phrase “the body becomes tranquil” (kāyopi passambhāti) as nāmakāyopi karajakāyopi, that is “the mental body and the body born of deeds”. This is the same gloss that this commentary gives on the term passaddho kāyo when it appears at AN I 148, as noted above. In that place, of course, the term citta (mind) is not mentioned in the text. Here the commentary makes no mention of the fact that the phrase kāyopi pi passambhāti is followed immediately by cittam pi passambhāti. In fact, it has placed itself in a difficult position to give a coherent explanation for citta here, having already given “the mental body” as a part of its definition of kāya.

When the Saṁyuttanikāya commentary gives its interpretation of the phrase “there are, bhikkhus, tranquillity of body and tranquillity of mind” (atthi bhikkhave kāyapassaddhi cittapassaddhi), we find an interpretation of these terms which we have not yet encountered:

“Tranquillity of the body” (means) tranquillity of the agitiation of three aggregates. “Tranquillity of the mind” (means) tranquillity of the aggregate of consciousness.\textsuperscript{112}

This explanation is related to a passage which occurs a number of times in the Dhammasaṅgani, the first book of the Abhidhamma. This passage is an explanation of kāyapassaddhi and cittapassaddhi: the first is explained as tranquillity of the aggregates of vedanā, perception (saḷāṇā) and the saṭṭhānaṃ, and the second as tranquillity of the aggregate of consciousness (viññāṇa).\textsuperscript{113} So the Saṁyuttanikāya commentary explains

\textsuperscript{111} Mp II 79 on AN I 43
\textsuperscript{112} kāyapassaddhi tiṁṇam khandhānaṃ darathapassaddhi. cittapassaddhīti viññāṇapakkhandhassā darathapassaddhi. Spk III 141 on SN V 66, same as Spk III 170 on SN V 111
\textsuperscript{113} Katanā tasmiṃ samaye kāyapasaddhi hoti? Yā tasmiṃ samaye vedanākhandhassā saṅkharāṅkhandhassā pasaddhi patipassaddhi passambhaṇā paṭipassambhaṇā paṭipassambhitattaṃ, ayaṃ tasmiṃ samaye kāyapasaddhi hoti. Katanā tasmiṃ samaye cītta-pasaddhi hoti? Yā tasmiṃ samaye viññāṇapakkhandhassā
kāya in this passage not as the “mental body” but as a particular aspect of the mental body, that is, as three of the four mental aggregates. The term citta (“mind”) is understood as referring to the fourth mental aggregate, consciousness (viññāṇa).

R. Gethin has made the following suggestive comments on the Dhammasangāṇi passage:

If one is to take this at face value, it seems to indicate that vedanā, saññā and saṁkhāras are seen as in some sense able to bridge the gap between mind and body. They are, as it were, what mediates one’s state of mind to the body, and vice versa.114

These comments may not apply, however, to the passage from the Saṃyuttanikāya commentary. In the context of commentarial interpretations of similar passages, it seems, rather, that the commentary here is taking body (kāya) as the “mental body” (nāma-kāya), or at least as a part of the mental body (i.e. vedanā, saññā and saṁkhāra). The commentary still has to explain citta, and rather than remain silent, as the commentary on the similar Aṅguttaranikāya passage does, it takes citta as the aggregate of consciousness (viññāṇa). It seems, however, that the Saṃyuttanikāya commentary’s analysis of kāyapassaddhi and cittapassaddhi is not entirely coherent, perhaps as a result of an unwillingness to take the term kāya at face value, as meaning the physical body. Indeed, the interpretation of “body” as vedanā, perception and the saṁkhāras and of “mind” as consciousness seems somewhat strained in view of the fact that a few lines earlier in the text we find mention of “bodily energy” (kāyikāpaṇī viṇīyām) and “mental energy” (cetasikāpaṇī viṇīyām), which the commentary is quite happy to interpret in a straightforward manner, that is with “body” taken as referring to the physical body, and “mind” as meaning simply the mind in a non-technical sense.115

Nevertheless, Gethin’s comments are interesting and deserve consideration. His suggestion that vedanā, saññā and saṁkhāras “are, as it were, what mediates one’s state

---

115 Spk III 170 on SN V 111
of mind to the body, and vice versa” seems especially true of the way that we have seen *vedanā* used in the Nikāyas. Gethin goes on to make the following observations:

The notion of the reciprocal nature of the relationship between mind and body is further brought out by the way in which in the *Dhammasaṅgani* (followed by the later Abhidhamma) tranquillity of body and mind forms a group with five other pairs of items. These are lightness (*lahutā*) of mind and body, softness (*mudutā*) of mind and body, readiness (*kammapiṇātā*) of mind and body, fitness (*pāguṇātā*) of mind and body, straightness (*uḷukatā*) of mind and body [Dhs 9]. The relationship that these factors bear to the body is underlined by the fact that precisely the same terminology in part is applied to the physical world. Among the twenty-seven varieties of *rūpa* distinguished by the *Dhammasaṅgani* are lightness, softness and readiness of *rūpa* [Dhs 134, 144]. So what at one level seems to represent a quite straightforward observation of the relationship between body and mind is potentially a conception of some subtlety and precision.¹¹⁶

These are certainly very interesting ideas; Gethin does not, however, explore them in any further detail. Let us return to the Nikāyas to see if these texts can help us in understanding these concepts. There are many other places in the Nikāyas where the body and the mind are show as working together, apart from those that we have noticed in which this theme is treated in the context of “tranquillity” (*pāsaddhi*). It is worthwhile here investigating some of these passages because, as we have seen, the physical and mental aspects of *vedanā* are important characteristics of that phenomenon. An appreciation of the view that we find in the Nikāyas of the relationship between the mental and the physical may help us in our understanding of the nature of *vedanā*.

The expressions “the body with consciousness” (*saviṇṇāgaka kāya*) and “in this fathom-long body, along with its perceptions and thoughts” (*imasmīṇī żeva vyāmamaite kalevare saṇṭinhi samanake*)

There are two pithy expressions, found in a number of places in the Nikāyas, which are used to refer to the human being as a combination of mind and body. The more common

¹¹⁶ R. Gethin, 1992, p.156.
of these is the phrase saviṇīnāpaka kāya ("the body with consciousness"). It is found a number of times in each of the principal Nikāyas, except for the Dīghanikāya. The term viññāṇa ("consciousness") seems to be used in this expression in a non-technical sense as referring to the mental activities of a person in general. As S. Hamilton puts it: "... saviṇīnāṇa kāya (sic.) is a general expression which serves well in a situation where one wants to convey the meaning of the whole human being's bodily and mental faculties". As far as it goes, this is a perfectly adequate description of this expression. It fails, however, to take account of the emphasis that this expression puts on the body in its description of a human being. In the expression "this body with its consciousness" the mental activities are based upon the body.

In the texts, this expression is always found in the locative: imasmin ca saviṇīnāpake kāye. The body with its consciousness is described as the place where the "underlying tendencies" (anusayas) are eradicated. The use of the locative is reminiscent of the passage which we looked at above from the Ākāsasutta of the Vedanāsamyutta in which different kinds of vedanās are said to arise "in this body" (imamani kāyasmi). This puts similar emphasis on the body in its description of a phenomenon which is associated both with the mind and the body.

The other important expression which refers to a person as composed of physical and mental activities is found only three times in the Nikāyas.

Friend, in this very fathom-long body, along with its perceptions and thoughts, I proclaim the world to be, likewise the origin of the world and the making of the world to end, likewise the practice going to the ending of the world.  

The image of the body here is striking in its vivid physicality: "this fathom-long body". The term for body is not the usual kāya, nor the less common sarīra, but a term which is also used to refer to a dead body: kaḷevara. Indeed C.A.F. Rhys Davids, the first translator of this passage, rendered kaḷevara as "carcase", not in the sense of a dead body

117 MN III 18, 32, 36; SN II 252, 253; SN III 80 (twice); 103; 136-37, SN III 169-70; AN I 132 & 133, and AN IV 53.  
119 api khvāham āvuso imasmiṁeva vyāmamattte kaḷevarē saviṇīnāsāsanaac lokān ca pāṭibāpenni lokasmudayaṁ ca lokanirodhaṁ ca lokanirodhaṁniṁ paṭipadan ti. SN I 62 (= AN II 48, 50)
but as a deprecating way of referring to a living body. The phrase also gives us a rough measure of this “thing”. And again, as in the previous expression, the mental activities are based on this body. C.A.F. Rhys Davids brings this out in a rote which she gives to her translation which explains the literal meaning of the phrase: “this be-saññā-ed be-mano-ed carcase”. As with the previous expression, the connotations of the terms for the mental activities seem to be, in this context, quite general and non-technical: the commentary glosses manas, one of the words for mind, with another word for mind, citta. One is reminded of the Samyuttanikāya passage which associates these terms, along with the term viññāna, which we found in the previous expression: “that which is called “citta”, “manas” and “viññāna”.

The expression imasmiññeva vyāmamatte kāle vare saññīmhi samanake has other features in common with the expression imasmiñ ca saviññānake kāye. Both of them clearly are in the locative case, making the body with its mental activities the locus of the action of the sentence. As noted above, there is a parallel with the description of vedanā arising “in this body” (imasmīna kāyasmin) in the Ākāsasutta of the Vedarāsamyutta.

Another point to note concerning the passages where we find a human being described as a “fathom-long body with perceptions and thoughts,” is that the context is of the utmost importance from the point of view of soteriology. What we have here, in effect, with these four aspects of the “world” (Joka), is a recasting of one of the central soteriological formulas of the Nikāyas, the four noble truths. The body with its mental activities is “where” the Buddha declares this form of the four noble truths. Whether we take the locative as a locative of reference or whether we take it in a more literal sense, the emphasis on the body in this important passage is striking. We have noted that vedanā is often described as having both mental and bodily aspects, and that it is associated with the four noble truths on numerous occasions in the Vedanāsamyutta. In the first chapter, we noted the significance of the following passage:

---

122 Spk I 117 on SN I 62.
123 *Yaṃ ca kho etam bhikkhave vuccati cittam iti pi mano iti pi viññānaṃ iti pi*, SN II 94
Now to him who has feeling, bhikkhus, I make known: This is suffering. I make known: This is the arising of suffering. I make known: This is the cessation of suffering. I make known: This is the practice that leads to the cessation of suffering.\textsuperscript{124}

The term \textit{vediyamānassa} of this passage is not only linked etymologically to the term \textit{vedanā}, it must also be seen as standing in, as it were, for \textit{vedanā} because the preceding passage is a presentation of the twelve-fold dependent origination schema (\textit{paṭiccasamuppādā}) which stops short at the term before \textit{vedanā}. The correspondence with our “fathom-long body” passage is striking. It is all the more so if we recall in this context the statement in the Ākāśasutta that the various \textit{vedanās} arise “in this body” (\textit{inasmiṃ kāyasmiṃ vividdhā vedanā uppajjantā}). The overall picture from these passages is thus one in which the physical body plays a very significant role in representations of the Buddha’s soteriological strategy.

Passages which give equal emphasis to bodily and mental events

There are a number of \textit{suttas} which appear to give equal emphasis to the body and the mind in certain aspects of their descriptions of soteriological practices. In the Bojjhanga-samaññutta of the Sāmyuttanikāya, the following passage is repeated for each of the six sense doors:

\begin{quote}
Herein, Kūṇḍaliya, a bhikkhu, seeing a delightful object with the eye, does not hanker for it, does not thrill thereat, does not develop lust for it. His body is unmoved, his mind is unmoved, inwardly well established and released. If with the eye he behold an object repulsive, he is not troubled by that, his mind is not unsettled or depressed or resentful because of that, but his body is unmoved, his mind is unmoved, inwardly well established and released.\textsuperscript{125}
\end{quote}

\textsuperscript{124} \textit{Vediya-mānassa kho paṇāham bhikkhave idam dukkhan ti paṇāhāpam, ayaṃ dukkhasamudayo ti paṇāhāpam, ayaṃ dukkhatilodho paṇāhāpam, ayaṃ dukkhatilodhatāminī paṭipadā ti paṇāhāpam. AN I 176-77

\textsuperscript{125} Idha Kūṇḍaliya bhikkhu cakkhunā rūpam disvā manāpaṃ nābhijjhati nābhijjhamsati na rūgam janeti, tassa thīto ca kāyo hoti thītām cittām ajjhātām susaṅghītāṃ suvīmuttaṃ. Cakkhunā kho paneva rūpam disvā ananāpaṃ na manūkho hoti, apatiṭhisīcito ñānaññāaso avyāpannaceto, tassa thīto ca kāyo hoti thītām cittām ajjhātām susaṅghītāṃ suvīmuttaṃ. SN V 74
A passage in the Udāna uses similar terms:

With mind and body firmly set,
Standing, seated or lying down,
If a bhikkhu should set up mindfulness,
He’d win the prize in first and last. 126

There are also passages which speak of both the mind and the body suffering:

... he meets with pain,
With pain of body, pain of mind. Tormented
By body that burns and mind that burns, alike
By day and night such live painfully. 127

In a passage which is found a number of times in the Āṅguttaranikāya, there is a similar image of both mind and body burning, the cause in this case being a purely mental event:

... passion overwhelms his mind; in that state he burns in body, he burns in mind... 128

Again in the Āṅguttaranikāya, both the body and the mind are said to be affected by craving, aversion and delusion (rāga, dosa, and moha) in the following passage, which is repeated for each of these:

"Would there not arise in that housefather or housefather's son burning fevers of body or of mind that are born of lust so that, tortured by them, he would live unhappily?" "They would arise, sir." 129

125 thitena kāyena thitena cetasā
 titularaśa nisīnno uда vā sayāno
eśam satim bhikkhu adhitthahāno
labetha pabbāpariyanti pisesaṃ. Ud. 61
126 kāyadukkhaṃ cetodukkhaṃ dukkhaṃ so adhipajcha ti
dayhamānaṃ kāyena dayhamānaṃ cetasā
127 ... rāgo cittam anuddhamseti. So rāganuddhamsena citerr paridhayhat'eva kāyena paridhayhati cetasā.
AN III 95, 96, 98.
Here as well the image is of both body and mind burning.

These themes are treated somewhat more fully in a *sutta* of the Majjhimanikāya, the Mahāsaṅgharakkhasutta. The following passage is repeated for each of the sense doors:

Bhikkhus, when one does not know and see the eye as it actually is, when one does not know and see forms, when one does not know and see the eye-consciousness as it actually is, when one does not know and see the eye-contact as it actually is, when one does not know and see as it actually is [the feeling] felt as pleasant or painful or neither-painful-nor-pleasant that arises with eye-contact as condition, then one is inflamed by lust for the eye, for forms, for eye-consciousness, for eye-contact, for [the feeling] felt as pleasant or painful or neither-painful-nor-pleasant that arises with eye-contact as condition.

When one abides inflamed by lust, fettered, infatuated, contemplating gratification, then the five aggregates affected by clinging are built up for oneself in the future; and one’s craving—which brings renewal of being, is accompanied by delight and lust, and delights in this and that—increases. One’s bodily and mental troubles increase, bodily and mental torments increase, one’s bodily and mental fevers increase, and one experiences bodily and mental suffering.\(^{130}\)

The image of both the body and the mind burning is found again in this passage, with two different terms used to describe this phenomena: *parīḷāha*, as in the passage looked at above, and *santāpa*, from the verbal root *tap*, to burn. Also of great interest in the

\(^{130}\) Api nu tassa gaṇapatissa vā gaṇapatiputtassa vā uppanjeyyam rāgajā parīḷāha kāyikā vā cetassīkā vā yehi so rāgojāhi parīḷāhehi parīdayanānāṇo dukkhaṃ sayeyyā ti. Evaṃ bhante. AN I 137

\(^{130}\) Cakkhaṃ, bhikkhave, ajānam apassaṃ yathābhūtaṃ, rūpe ajānam apassaṃ yathābhūtaṃ, cakkhuviṭṭhiṃ apassaṃ yathābhūtaṃ, yam p’idam cakkhusamphassapaccayā uppaḷajjati vedayitaṃ sukhaṃ vā dukkhaṃ vā adukkhaṃ suññakhaṃ vā, tam pi ajānam apassaṃ yathābhūtaṃ, cakkhusīnām sārajaṭi rūpesu sārajaṭi cakkhuviṭṭhiṇā sārajaṭi cakkhusamphassase sārajaṭi, yam p’idam cakkhusamphassapaccayā uppaḷajjati vedayitaṃ sukhaṃ vā dukkhaṃ vā adukkhaṃ suññakhaṃ vā tasmim pi sārajaṭi. Tassa sārajaṭassa saṃyojatas saṃyojitaṃ asañca nissannasañca viharato ayātaṃ pañcupādanakkhandhā upacayam gacchanti, taṃ hā c’assa punobhiṇikā na ṛsāgasahagati tatra tatrābhinninti, sā c’assa pāvāḍhanti. Tassa kāyikā pi darathā pāvāḍhanti, cetassikā pi darathā pāvāḍhanti, kāyikā pi santāpā pāvāḍhanti, cetassikā pi santāpā pāvāḍhanti, kāyikā pi parīḷāhā pāvāḍhanti, cetassikā pi parīḷāhā pāvāḍhanti. So kāyadukkhaṃ pi cetodukkhaṃ pi pañcaśaṇavedeti. MN III 287-88.
present context is the passage which leads into the description of pairs of bodily and mental phenomena. In this passage, which occurs very often in the Nikāyas with numerous variations, the term vedayita plays an important role. For a number of reasons, vedayita here must be very close in meaning to vedanā. The two words are clearly connected etymologically. And vedayita is here “caused by” (paṭcayā) the contact (saṃphassa) of the eye, just as vedanā is caused by contact (phassa) in general in the dependent origination schema (paṭicca-samuppāda). Furthermore, vedayita is given in a three-fold classification of pleasant, painful, and neither pleasant nor painful, which is one of the standard classifications for the various types of vedanā. “Not knowing, not seeing the vedayita which results from the contact of the eye (and of the other sense organs)”, leads to attachment to this vedayita, and thence to craving, and thence to bodily and mental suffering. The final phrase used to describe this suffering brings us back once again to the theme of vedanā: “He experiences suffering of the body and suffering of the mind” (So kīṣadukkhām pi cetodukkhām pi paṭīsaṇṇaḥ), which brings us in turn to the final important topics of this chapter: the verb paṭi-saṃ-vid, its relationship to the term vedanā, and its significance in descriptions of the relationship between the mind and the body.

Terms derived from paṭi-saṃ-vid, and their relationship to vedanā, and to physical and mental events

Paṭi-saṃ-vid is usually translated as “to experience” or “to feel”. The verbal root of this word, vid, is related to the term vedanā. Moreover, there are a number of passages in the Nikāyas which give strong indications that there are very close links between the ranges of meanings of the verb paṭi-saṃ-vid and the noun vedanā. In the second chapter of this thesis we saw that in a number of significant passages paṭi-saṃ-vid “stands in” for vedanā in statements of the dependent origination schema (paṭicca-samuppāda) which do not conform to the standard statement of that schema. We also find paṭi-saṃ-vid used together with the triad pleasant, painful and neither-pleasant-nor-painful (sukha, dukkha, adukkhamasukha), which is regularly associated with the term vedanā throughout the Nikāyas. In a sutta of the Majjhimanikāya, for example, we find the following:
Whatever this person experiences (patisamvedeti), whether pleasant or painful or neither-painful-nor-pleasant, unwholesome states diminish in him and wholesome states increase.\textsuperscript{131}

Furthermore, this passage is paralleled by a passage further on in the sutta which is repeated for pleasant, painful and neither-painful-nor-painful, and which uses the term vedanā instead of the verb pati-sam-vid.

Here, when someone feels a certain kind of pleasant vedanā, unwholesome states increase in him and wholesome states diminish...\textsuperscript{132}

Consider also the manner in which pati-sam-vid is paralleled by vedanā in the following passage from the Devadahasutta of the Majjhimanikāya:

... if, bhikkhus, the pleasure and pain which creatures experience [patisamvedenti] are due to what was previously done, certainly, bhikkhus, the Tathāgata was formerly a doer of deeds that were well done in that he now feels [vedenti] such cankerless pleasant vedanā.\textsuperscript{133}

In the Mahānidānasutta of the Dīghanikāya, we find the two terms in one phrase: “My self is not vedanā, my self does not feel [apatiṣaṃvedano]”.\textsuperscript{134} Because of these close connections between the term vedanā and forms derived from pati-sam-vid, an investigation of the role that forms derived from pati-sam-vid play in descriptions of the relationship between the mind and the body is warranted in the present context.

In the passage quoted above from the Mahāsālāyatanikasutta, pati-sam-vid is used in connection with both bodily suffering and mental suffering; the two are juxtaposed.\textsuperscript{135}

There are also a number of passages in the Nikāyas in which pati-sam-vid is associated

\textsuperscript{131} Yama kiṁdham puṇīta pātisamvedeti sukham vā dukkham vā adukkhamsukham vā, tassa akusala dhāmannā parhiṭhāyanti kusala dhāmannā abhibhādhanti... MN I 475 and cf. MN III 273.
\textsuperscript{132} Idh'ekaccassa evanipam sukham vedanam vediyato akusala dhāmannā abhibhādhanti kusala dhāmannā parhiṭhāyanti... MN I 475
\textsuperscript{133} Sace bhikkhave sattā pubbekatahetu sukhadukkham patiṣaṃvedenti, adhā bhikkhave Tathāgato pubbesukatakammāceti, yaṃ etaraṃ evanipā anāsava sukkhā vedanā vedeti. MN II 227
\textsuperscript{134} na h'eva kho me vedanā attā, appatiṣaṃvedano me attā. DN II 66
\textsuperscript{135} So kāyadukkhami pi cetodukkhami pi pātisamvedeti. MN III 287-88.
either with physical events or with mental events. Let us first take a look at those passages in which the physical aspect is most important. The following passage appears in the Samyuttanikāya:

Were he struck, lord, by but one arrow, he would because of that suffer [patisamvediyetha] pain [dukkha] and sorrow [domanassa]; what need to speak of being struck by three hundred.\(^{136}\)

The two terms used here to describe the suffering caused by the arrow, *dukkha* and *domanassa*, are of some interest in the present discussion. These terms are glossed in the Mahāsatipāṭhānasutta in a manner which once again reveals the interest that the Nikāyas have in the physical and mental aspects of various phenomena:

And what is pain (*dukkha*)? Whatever bodily painful feeling, bodily unpleasant feeling, painful and unpleasant feeling results from bodily contact, that, bhikkhus is called lamentation.

And what is sadness (*domanassa*)? Whatever mental painful feeling, mental unpleasant feeling, painful or unpleasant sensation results from mental contact, that, bhikkhus, is called sadness.\(^{137}\)

The mental nature of *domanassa* is clear from the term itself: *domanassa* is a formation from *manas* ("mind") with the prefix *duṭ(r)*, implying difficulty or badness. This is made explicit in the above gloss. We also find the two terms *sukha* and *somanassa* paired in a similar way, and at SN V 209 they are described as bodily (*kāyika*) pleasure and mental (*cetasika*) pleasure respectively. This neat exegesis of these terms does not, however, fit with all the contexts in which they occur. In the passage quoted above from the Mahāsalāyatanasutta, for example, we find suffering (*dukkha*) specified as "suffering of the mind" (*cetodukkha*). In the above passage from the Samyuttanikāya, the suffering (*dukkha*) that the person is struck by an arrow would experience (*patisamvediyetha*)

\(^{136}\) Ekissa pi bhante sattiyaṁ haṁmāno tato nidānaṁ dukkhaṁ domanassaṁ patisamvediyetha ko para vāde tuhi sattisatehi haṁmāyamāno ti. SN II 100

\(^{137}\) Katamaṁ ca bhikkhave dukkham? Yaṁ kho bhikkhave kāyikaṁ dukkhaṁ kāyikam asaṁ kāyasamphassajāṁ dukkham asaṁ vedayitaṁ, idaṁ vuccati bhikkhave dukkham. Katamaṁ ca bhikkhave domanassaṁ? Yaṁ kho bhikkhave cetasikāṁ dukkhaṁ cetasikam asaṁ manesamphassajāṁ dukkham asaṁ vedayitaṁ, idaṁ vuccati bhikkhave domanassaṁ. DN II 306
is clearly bodily suffering. At the same time he would experience mental suffering (domanassa).

_Pati-sam-vid_ used in connection with mental events

We turn now to those passages which in which _pati-sam-vid_ is used in the context of purely mental events. There are a number of places in which _pati-sam-vid_ occurs with the phrase “mental suffering and distress” (_cetasikam dukkham domanassam_). The following passage occurs in two places in the Samyuttanikāya; on each occasion it is repeated five times to illustrate the breaking of each of the layperson’s “five precepts” (cf. AN III 203-5; 208-12):

That guilty dread, housefather, which he who kills begets in this very life, as a result of his killing; that guilty dread about the future life, which he who kills begets; that mental suffering and distress experienced [ _patisamvediyati_ by him...]

_Pati-sam-vid_ is also used in connection with mental events without reference to the phrase “mental suffering and distress” (_cetasikam dukkham domanassam_). The following passage is from a _sutta_ in the Majjhimanikāya which describes some of the Buddha’s students ( _sāvakas_ ) who pay attention to his teaching, and others who do not. The Buddha remains balanced with both of these types of students:

With that the Tathāgata is not satisfied and experiences [ _patisamvedeti_ ] no satisfaction, and he is not dissatisfied and experiences no dissatisfaction.

The Buddha does not experience ( _patisamvedeti_ ) _attamanatā_ (“satisfaction” or “pleasure”). This is another term which contains the word _manas_ (“mind”), the first part of the compound being a past participle from _ā-dā_ , “taken up”. The literal meaning of

---

138 eg. AN I 157, AN I 216.
139 Yam ghapatī pāṇātipāti pāṇātipātapaccayā ditthadhārunikam pi bhayaṃ veram pasavati, samparāyikam pi bhayaṃ veram pasavati, _cetasikam pi dukkham domanassam patisamvediyati_. SN II 68 & SN V 387-88
140 Tatra bhikkhave Tathāgato na c’eva attamanatā hoti na ca _attamanatam patisamvedeti_, na ca _anaattamanatām patisamvedeti_. MN III 221
the term is thus “the state of one who has an up raised mind”. So here again pati-sam-vid is used in connection with mental activity.\textsuperscript{141}

The above passages give an overview of the use of the term pati-sam-vid in connection with mental and physical events.

\textit{Ānāpānasati} and the description of mental and bodily events

There is a very important practice described in many places in the Nikāyas in which terms derived from pati-sam-vid play a significant role, and for which the above discussion will serve as a useful introduction, because the question of mental and bodily events is raised by this practice: this is the practice of the awareness of the incoming and outgoing breath (ānāpānasati). Descriptions of this practice occurs in the Satipaṭṭhānasutras of the Dīghaniṃaka and the Majjhimaṃaṇika.\textsuperscript{142} An entire sutta of the Majjhimaṇiṃaṇika, the Ānāpānasatisutta, is devoted to a full exposition of the practice and its relation to other important practices. In the Mahārāhulovādasutta of the Majjhimaṇiṃaṇika, the Buddha is represented as teaching this practice to his son, Rāhula, who had become a bhikkhu.\textsuperscript{143} And there is an entire section (samyutta) of the fifth volume of the Saṁyuttanikāya devoted to suttas dealing with this topic. The practice is also described in a sutta of the Aṅguttaranikāya.\textsuperscript{144}

The very name of the practice of ānāpānasati indicates that it is connected with both the body and with the mind. Breathing in and breathing out (ānāpāna) is clearly a physical function, and the awareness of this (sati) is a mental activity. In the Ānāpānasamyutta of the Saṁyuttanikāya which deals with this topic, there are, moreover, explicit references to the mental and bodily effects of this practice. In one sutta there is a description of Mahākappina, a senior bhikkhu, seated in meditation. The Buddha asks the bhikkhu if wavering (itijitatta) or shaking (phanditatta) of the body of this bhikkhu is ever seen. They reply that such things are never seen, whether he is sitting amid the Saṅgha or on his own. The Buddha goes on to make the following statement:

\textsuperscript{141} Cf. a similar usage at DN III 60, rājā... dibbe cakkarañcane antarahaṁ anattamano abhosi, anattamanaṁ ca patissadvadäsi.
\textsuperscript{142} DN II 291 and MN I 56
\textsuperscript{143} MN I 425
\textsuperscript{144} AN V 111
It is by cultivating and making much of the concentration on in-breathing and out-breathing that there is no wavering or shaking of body, no wavering or shaking of mind.\textsuperscript{145}

The effects of the practice of ānāpānasati are here given in both physical and mental terms.

In another \textit{sutta} of this \textit{samyutta} the Buddha explains the benefits, physical and mental, that he gained from this practice before he was fully enlightened, and he recommends that the bhikkhus practice in this way if they wish to experience similar benefits:

Formerly, bhikkhus, before I myself was enlightened with the perfect wisdom, and was yet a Bodhisattva, I used generally to spend my time in this way of living [that is, concentrated on ānāpānasati]. As I generally lived in this way, neither my body nor my eyes were fatigued, and my mind was freed from the āsavas.

Wherefore, bhikkhus, if a bhikkhu should desire: May neither my body nor my eyes be fatigued, and by not clinging may my mind be free from the āsavas, --he must give strict attention to this same intent concentration on in-breathing and out-breathing.\textsuperscript{146}

The third \textit{sutta} of the Ānāpānasāmyutta in which the body plays an important role is the Vesālīsutta. The \textit{sutta} relates that on a certain occasion the Buddha gave a discourse on "the impure" (\textit{asubba}). No details of this discourse are given, but it is related that after the Buddha had withdraw, requesting not to be disturbed for a fortnight, the bhikkhus tried to put the teachings of this discourse into practice with disastrous results:

\textsuperscript{145} Ānāpānasatisamādhīsa bhikkhave bhāvītattā bahulikatattā neva kāyassa iṭhitattām vā hoti phanditattām vā, na cittassa iṭhitattām vā hoti phanditattām vā. SN V 316

\textsuperscript{146} Aham pi sudam bhikkhave pubbeva sambodhā anabbhisambuddho bodhisatto va samāna iminā vihārena bahulam viharāmi, tassa mayham bhikkhave iminā vihārena bahulam viharato neva kāyo kilamati na cakkhuni, anupādāya ca me āsavhe cittaṁ vīmuccati. Tasmaś ti ha bhikkhave bhikkhu ce pi ikkathheyya Neva kāyo kilameyya na ca cakkhuni, anupādāya ca me āsavhe cittaṁ vīmucceyyā ti. Ayam eva ānāpānasatisamādhī sādhukam manasi kātabbo. SN V 317
As to this body, they worried about it, felt shame and loathing for it, and sought for a weapon [to kill themselves].

When the Buddha returned, and found out that the bhikkhus had misunderstood his teaching on the impure and interpreted it as revulsion for the body, he taught them mindfulness of in- and out-breathing. It is possible to see ānāpānasati here being considered as a corrective to the aversion for the body that the bhikkhus had developed.

Descriptions of the practice of ānāpānasati

Let us turn now to the descriptions of the actual practice of ānāpānasati that we find in these texts. If the text is laid out in point form, the important role that the term pati-samp-vid plays is immediately evident. This also highlights the roles of bodily and mental functions in this practice:

1) Breathing in long, he understands: “I breathe in long”; or breathing out long, he understands: “I breathe out long”.
2) Breathing in short, he understands: “I breathe in short”. ...
3) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in feeling the whole body (sabbakāyapatisampvedi)”; he trains thus: “I shall breathe out feeling the whole body”.
4) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in tranquillising the bodily formation (passambhayam kāyasaṅkhāram)” ... 
5) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in feeling rapture (pittipatisampvedi)” ...
6) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in feeling pleasure (sukhapatipatisampvedi)” ...
7) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in feeling the mental formation (cittasaṅkhārapatisampvedi)” ...
8) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in tranquillising the mental formation (passambhayam cittasaṅkhāram)” ...
9) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in feeling the mind (cittapatisampvedi)” ...
10) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in gladdening the mind” ...
11) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in concentrating the mind” ...

147 Te iminā kāyena atīyāyānā hācāyamānā jīgucchamānā saṭṭhahārakaṁ pariyesati. SN V 320.
12) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in liberating the mind.”
13) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in contemplating impermanence.” ...
14) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in contemplating fading away.” ...
15) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in contemplating cessation.” ...
16) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in contemplating relinquishment.” ...

In the Ānāpānasatisutta and in several of the suttas of the Ānāpānasatiyutta this presentation is followed by an exposition of the same sixteen items divided into four groups of four items each. Each of these groups is associated with one of the four establishing of mindfulness (satipaṭṭhānas): the first with the observation of the body (kāyānupassanā), the second with the observation of vedanā (vedanānupassanā), the third with the observation of the mind (cittānupassanā), and the fourth with the observation of mental phenomena (dhammānupassanā). In fact in some of these suttas, this second presentation of the sixteen items comes as the answer to the question “And how, bhikkhus, does mindfulness of breathing, developed and cultivated, fulfill the four establishments of mindfulness?” This system of classification is partly reflected in the Satipaṭṭhānasuttas themselves. The description of ānāpānasati there includes only the first four items of this list, and, in accordance with the above classification, is found in the section on the observation of the body (kāyānupassanā). The other sections, however, have no mention of ānāpānasati.

148 digham va assasanto dighaṃ assasāṃti pajānti, dighaṃ va passasanto dighaṃ passasāṃti pajānti. rassaṃ va assasanto rassaṃ assasāṃti pajānti... sabbakāyapatisaṃvedi assasissāṃti sikkhati, sabbakāyapatisaṃvedi passasissāṃti sikkhati... passambhayaṃ kāyasankhāraṃ assasissāṃti sikkhati... pittapatisaṃvedi assasissāṃti sikkhati... sukhapatisaṃvedi assasissāṃti sikkhati... cittasankhārapatisaṃvedi assasissāṃti sikkhati... passambhayaṃ cittasankhāraṃ assasissāṃti sikkhati... cītāpanatisaṃvedi assasissāṃti sikkhati... abhīpomadayaṃ cittāṃ assasissāṃti sikkhati... samādahaṃ cittāṃ assasissāṃti sikkhati... vimocayaṃ cittāṃ assasissāṃti sikkhati... aniccānupassī assasissāṃti sikkhati... virāgānupassī assasissāṃti sikkhati... nirodhaṇupassī assasissāṃti sikkhati... paṭissaggānupassī assasissāṃti sikkhati...

MN I 425; III 82-83; SN V 311-41; passim.; AN V 111
149 Numbers 10, 13-16
150 Kathām bhāvita ca bhikkhave ānāpānasati kathāṃ bhabhukatā caitāro satipaṭṭhāne paripūrṇi? MN III 83, cf. SN V 329, 334
In the context of the present discussion, the first phrase to catch our attention in this first group is “He trains thus: “I shall breathe in feeling the whole body (sabbakāya patisamvedi)”. Here paṭi-saṅ-vid is clearly used in the context of bodily activity. This expression seems to be saying that the bhikkhu is training himself to feel his whole body as he breathes in, and, in the following phrase, as he breathes out. If one takes into account here the connection between paṭi-saṅ-vid and vedanā, and the statement in the Vedanāsamyutta that vedanā arises “in this body” (imasmiṃ kāyasmiṃ vividhā vedanā uppajjanti), this interpretation seems quite plausible.

The commentaries almost invariably give very few comments on the practice of anāpānasati, instead, they refer to the Visuddhimagga. The Visuddhimagga sees the above phrase in a quite different light. As we have noted in connection with other passages, there appears to be a reluctance on the part of the commentarial tradition to take the term kāya in its most straightforward meaning as the physical body. Here, despite the fact that we are in the section related to the observation of the body, which is explicitly the observation of the physical body of the person undertaking this practice, the Visuddhimagga interprets the term body (kāya) as the “in-breath body” and the “out-breath body.”151 The text’s “whole body” (sabbakāya) is understood in this interpretation as the “beginning, middle and end” (ādimajjhapaṭiyāsāna) of this “body of the breath” of which the meditator is to be aware.

The next item from this list of interest in our study is the fourth one. This phrase is paralleled by the eighth member of the list:

4) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in tranquillisng the bodily formation...”
   (passambhayam kāyasankhāraṃ assasissāmiṃ sikkhati...)
8) He trains thus: “I shall breathe in tranquillisng the mental formation ... “
   (passambhayam cittasankhāram assasissāmiṃ sikkhati...)

With these two phrases we see once again the concerns that these texts show for both the bodily and mental aspects of certain phenomena. The word passambhayam (“tranguilising”) is the present participle of the verb passambheti, which is the causative

151 assasukāya and passasukāya Vism. 273
form of the verb *passambhati*. This verb is related to the past passive participle *passaddha* ("tranquilized") and the noun *passaddhi* ("tranquility"). We have seen that the mental and physical aspects of these notions are mentioned in the texts, for example in the phrase “There is, bhikkhus, tranquility of the body and tranquility of the mind.”152 There are five places in the Nikāyas in which the description of the practice of ānāpānasati, which includes of course items 4) and 8) quoted above, occurs in the same *sutta* as the phrase “the body becomes tranquil, the mind becomes tranquil, (there is) the awakening-factor of tranquillity”.153 The parallels between these phrases is immediately apparent. In each of these *suttas*, a connection is explicitly made between the practice of ānāpānasati and the practice of the seven factors of awakening. The awakening-factor of tranquillity (*passaddhisambojjhanga*) is the fifth of these factors of awakening.

It seems, then, quite reasonable to pair the fourth and eighth items of the description of ānāpānasati, and to see in them a paralleling of physical and mental phenomena. There is, however, an obvious difference between the ānāpānasati phrases and the description of the awakening-factor of tranquillity: in the ānāpānasati setting we are dealing with the *saṅkhāra* of the body (*kāya*) and the *saṅkhāra* of the mind (*citta*); the *passaddhisambojjhanga* mentions only body (*kāya*) and mind (*citta*). The term *saṅkhāra* is a notoriously difficult one to interpret. Paul Griffiths considers it to be “effectively untranslatable”154. Sometimes its meaning is quite general, and in the present context it is possible to understand *kāyasāṅkhāra* and *cittasaṅkhāra* as bodily and mental activities in general.

The Visuddhimagga, however, again sees the matter differently. It understands *kāyasāṅkhāra* and *cittasaṅkhāra* in these phrases as having very specific meanings: for the Visuddhimagga, *kāyasāṅkhāra* is “in-breathing and out-breathing” (*assāsapassāsā)*155 and *cittasaṅkhāra* is “perception and *vedanā*” (*saññā ca *vedanā ca*).156 These definitions

---

152 Atthi bhikkhave kāyapassaddhī cittapassaddhī SN V 66, 104, 107
153 kāya pi *passambhāti* cittam pi *passambhāti*, *passaddhisambojjhango* MN III 86; SN V 332, 338; and SN V 334 and 335, though here the text has been much abbreviated
155 The Visuddhimagga quotes from the Paṭisambhidāmagga on this point: *Katame kāyasāṅkhāra? Dīgham assāsa...* passāsākāyikā ete dharmā kāyapaṭibaddhā kāyasāṅkhāra... FTS ed. of Vism, p.276.
156 The Visuddhimagga and the commentaries to the relevant passages in the Ānāpānasatisutta of the Majjhimanikāya (MA IV 141 on MN III 84) and the Ānāpānasānyuutta of the Sānyuttanikāya (SA III 271 on SN V 324)
are connected with a passage in the Cūḷavedālāsutta of the Majjhimanikāya which we have had occasion to refer to earlier in this chapter. There kāyasankhāra and cittasankhāra are defined in just this manner. There are two points which support the Visuddhimagga’s interpretation. Firstly, understanding kāyasankhāra as “in-breathing and out-breathing” in the context of a description of the practice of “mindfulness of in-breathing and out-breathing” seems to make perfect sense. Secondly, in those suttae where the ānāpānasati practice is divided into four groups corresponding to the four satipatthānas, cittasankhāra occurs as a member of the group which belongs to the practice of the observation of vedanā (vedanānupassanā). Understanding cittasankhāra, therefore, as “perception and vedanā” is a quite convincing explanation of the term.

One way in which this explanation falls short, however, is that it fails to make a complete correspondence between the description of ānāpānasati and the description of the three types of sankhāras found in the Cūḷavedālāsutta because it does not account for one of these sankhāras, namely, the sankhāra of speech (vacīsankhāra), which is explained in a metaphorical manner in the Cūḷavedālāsutta as referring to modes of thinking (vitakkavicāra).

Nevertheless, the commentaries may well be justified in their interpretation of the terms kāyasankhāra and cittasankhāra, though we cannot rule out the possibility that the intention of the author(s) of the sutta passages was to parallel bodily activities in a general sense and mental activities in a general sense.

The Visuddhimagga quotes from the Pāṭisambhidāmagga, an exegetical work from the Khuddakānikāya, the fifth Nikāya, to give another interpretation of the term kāyasankhāra. This second interpretation appears to take the term to mean activities associated with the physical body in general, whereas the first interpretation specifies in- and out-breathing as kāyasankhāra. The passage quoted proceeds as follows:

all quote from the Pāṭisambhidāmagga: “Perception and feeling belong to the mind, these things being bound up with the mind are mental formations” (Nānamoli) (saññā ca vedanā ca cetasikā, ete dhammā cittapaśībuddhi cittasankhārā) Pāṭis. i.188. The Visuddhimagga also says “[the mental formation consists of the two aggregates of feeling and perception” (Nānamoli, p.310) (Cittasankhāro ti vedanādayo dve khandhā) PTS ed. of VM, p.288.
When there are such bodily formations [sāṅkhāras] whereby there is bending backwards, sideways, in all directions, and forwards, and perturbation, vacillation, moving and shaking of the body, he trains thus “I shall breathe in tranquilizing the bodily formation”, he trains thus “I shall breathe out tranquilizing the bodily formation”. When there are such bodily formations whereby there is no bending backwards, sideways, in all directions, and forwards, and no perturbation, vacillation, moving and shaking of the body, quietly, subtly, he trains thus “I shall breathe in tranquilizing the bodily formation”, he trains thus “I shall breathe out tranquilizing the bodily formation”.

The emphasis here is clearly on the physical body as a whole, which we may compare with cittasāṅkhāra as referring to mental activities in general.

Thus descriptions of the practice of ānāpānasati reflect the interest that we find in the Nikāyas in mental and physical aspects of various phenomena.

Conclusion

This survey of descriptions of the mental and physical aspects of vedanā in the Nikāyas shows that the widely held assumption that vedanā is a purely mental phenomenon is not borne out by a close study of the texts. Furthermore, the interest that the texts show in describing both mental and physical aspects of vedanā reflects a general interest in the Nikāyas in mental and physical aspects of various phenomena.

Given the important role that vedanā plays in certain descriptions of soteriological practices and of causal sequences, as seen in the first two chapters of this thesis, the attempt made in this chapter to further our understanding of the nature of vedanā assumes considerable significance.

157  Ānāpolū. Vism. viii.181 quotes Patissambhidāmagga, p.184-6
Yathārūpāni kāyasāṅkhārehi kāyassa ānāmanā, vināmanā, sannāmanā, pāpanā, iñjāna, phandāna, calanā, kampanā passambhayantu kāyasāṅkhāram assasissāmi ti sikkhati, passambhayaṃ kāyasāṅkhāram passasissāmi ti sikkhati. Yathārūpāni kāyasāṅkhārehi kāyassa na ānāmanā, na vināmanā, na sannāmanā, na pāpanā, aṇījāna, apbandō, acañjāna, aca kalanā, aca kampanā santuṃ sukhumāṃ passambhayantu kāyasāṅkhāram assasissāmi passasissāmi ti sikkhati. PTS ed., p.276.
Chapter Four: A survey of the use of the term vedanā in descriptions of the workings of kamma in the Nikāyas

In certain characteristic descriptions of the results of kamma that are found in the Nikāyas, the term vedanā features prominently. J. McDermott comments on one aspect of kamma in the following terms:

The usual position of the Pāli Nikāyas ... is that there are five possible courses, or realms of existence (gati), into which sentient beings may be born. These five courses, or destinies—as the term is often translated—are listed in ascending order as (1) niraya, purgatory or hell; (2) tiracchānayoni, brute creation, the realm of animals; (3) pettivisaya, the world of the shades; (4) manussā, men, human existence; (5) devā, the gods, heavenly existence.¹

He adds in a footnote that “these five gatis are listed at Dīgha-Nikāya 3.234; Aṭṭhakaccana-Nikāya 4.459; Majjhima-Nikāya 1.73...” ² In the last mentioned, a part of the Mahāsīhanādasutta, we find some elaboration on these states. For the first gati, the Buddha is represented as speaking in the following terms:

And then later on, with the divine eye, which is purified and surpasses the human, I see that on the dissolution of the body, after death, he has reappeared in a state of deprivation, in an unhappy destination, in perdition, in hell, and is feeling extremely painful, racking, piercing vedanā.³

The experiencing of the fruit of one’s actions is here explained in terms of the type of vedanā that one feels in one’s next life. Similarly, for the remaining four “destinies”, the state in which one is born is spoken of in terms of the vedanā which one feels (vediyamāna) in that state. For one reborn in the realm of animals (tiracchānayoni), the vedanā felt there is “painful, racking, piercing” (dukkha tiṭṭha kaṭukā). For one reborn in

---

² Ibid., p.172, note 25.
³ tam evaṃ passiṇi aparena samayena dibbena cakkhunā visuddhena atikkantavanusakena iāyassa bhedaḥ param maranā apāyaṃ duggatiṃ vinipatam nirayaṃ upapannaṃ ekantadukkha tiṭṭha kaṭukā vedanā vediyamānaṃ. MN 174
the “the realm of the departed spirits” (PED for pittivisaya) there is “abundantly painful” vedanā (dukkhabhūta). For one reborn amongst human beings, there is much pleasurable vedanā (sukhabhūta vedanā). And for one reborn in a “good destiny” (sugati), that is in heaven (sagga), there is only pleasant vedanā (ekantasukhā vedanā).

In a sutta of the Aṅguttaranikāya, these five destinies are listed in connection with a term which is related to the term vedanā—vedaniya. This comes as the reply to the question “And what, bhikkhus, is the diversity of kamma?”^4:

There is action that is experienced (vedaniya) in hell, there is action that is experienced in the realm of animals, there is action that is experienced in the realm of the departed, there is action that is experienced in the world of humans, there is action that is experienced in the world of the gods.5

This passage is especially noteworthy because it follows on immediately from one of the most remarkable statements on kamma/karma in Indian thought, in which the Buddha is represented as declaring that he says that kamma is “intention” (cetana).^6 R. Gombrich has commented that this marks “a turning point in the history of civilisation” in its ethicizing of the universe.7

The Kukkūravatikasutta and vedanā

So in these significant passages on the concept of kamma, vedanā and a term closely related to vedanā feature prominently. This happens again in another of the key passages on kamma in the Nikāyas. The following passage is found at a number of places; the locus classicus is its appearance in the Kukkūravatikasutta of the Majjhimanikāya. The Buddha is represented as addressing a certain Puṇṇa:

---

^4 Katamo ca bhikkhave kammānaṁ vemattatā? AN III 415
^5 Athi bhikkhave kammānaṁ ariyavedaniyaṁ, atthi kammānaṁ tiracchāniyoneyvedaniyaṁ, atthi kammānaṁ pittivisayedaniyaṁ, atthi kammānaṁ manussalokavedaniyaṁ, atthi kammānaṁ devalokavedaniyaṁ. AN III 415
^6 Cetaniṁ bhikkhave kammānaṁ vadāni; cetajīvī kammānaṁ karoti ... AN III 415
Punça, there are four kinds of action (kamma) proclaimed by me after realising them for myself with direct knowledge. What are the four? There is dark action with dark result; there is bright action with bright result; there is dark-and-bright action with dark-and-bright result; and there is action that is neither dark nor bright with neither-dark-nor-bright result, action that leads to the destruction of action.⁸

Following this announcement of the theme, each of the four kinds of action are described. Firstly the “dark action” (kammapi kañhape):

Here someone generates an afflictive bodily formation, an afflictive verbal formation, an afflictive mental formation. Having generated an afflictive bodily formation, an afflictive verbal formation, an afflictive mental formation, he reappears in an afflictive world. When he has reappeared in an afflictive world, afflictive contacts touch him. Being touched by afflictive contacts, he feels afflictive vedanā, extremely painful, as in the case of the beings in hell.⁹

As in the Mahāśīhanādasutta, the end result of an action (kamma) is expressed in terms of vedanā. Similarly, when the “bright action with bright result” (kammapi sukkañ sukkavipāka) is explained, the result is given in terms of vedanā: the person who generates unafflictive bodily, verbal and mental formations subsequently reappears in an unafflictive world and feels vedanā which is unafflictive and extremely pleasant (ekantasukha), “as in the case of the Subhakīṇa devas”. And again, for action “which is both dark and bright” (kammapi kañhasukkañ), that is for one who generates bodily, verbal and mental formations which are both afflictive and unafflictive, the result is reappearence in a world which is both afflictive and unafflictive where one feels vedanā which is both afflictive and unafflictive, vedanā which is a mixture of pleasure and pain.

---

⁸ Cattār' imāni Punça kammāni mayā sayam abhīhitāt sacechikatvā pave ṭitātī, katamātim catāti: Atthi Punça kammapi kañhaṃ kañhavipākaṃ, atthi Punça kammapi sukkañ sukhaṃ sukhavipākaṃ, atthi Punça kammapi kañhasukkañ kañhasukkavipākaṃ, atthi Punça kammapi kañhasukkañ sukkañ sukhaṃ sukhavipākaṃ kammapi kañhasukkavipākaṃ kammapi kañhasukkavipākaṃ sannavattati. MN I 389

⁹ Idha Punça ekacca sabhyābajjhaṃ kāyasaṅkhāram abhisankharoti... abhisankharitā sabhyābajjhaṃ lokaṃ upaṣajjati... sabhyābajjhaṃ phassā phusaṃti... sabhyābajjhaṃ vedanāṃ vedetā ekantaṭukhaṃ seyyathā pi satā nereyyikā. MN I 389-90.
(vokinnam sukhadukkham), "as is the case of human beings and some gods and some beings in the lower worlds."\(^{10}\)

Thus these three passages give a prominent role to vedanā in the working out of kamma. The fourth passage, which describes action which leads to the destruction of action (kammaṁ kammakkhayāya saṁvattati), makes no mention of vedanā.\(^{11}\)

The term duggati-vedaniya

In a phrase which occurs in many places in the Nikāyas, a person who sees with the divine eye (dibba cakkhut) sees beings who have arisen “according to their actions” (yathā-kammūpaṇe) in “happy and unhappy destinations” (sugate duggate)\(^{12}\). In the Cūḷa-assaparasutta of the Majjhimanikāya the term vedaniya is compounded with a similar term for “unhappy destination”--duggati--in the Buddha’s following statement:

I, bhikkhus, say that if he does not follow the practice fitting for recluses, there is no getting rid of these stains on recluses, defects in recluses, faults in recluses, occasions for the sorrowful states, of what is to be experienced in an unhappy destination (duggativedaniya).\(^{13}\)

Of the five destinations into which one may be reborn in accordance with one’s kamma,\(^{14}\) three are duggatis, “unhappy destinations”. Here these duggatis are “to be felt” or “to be experienced” (vedaniya) by the ascetic (samana) who behaves wrongly.

---

\(^{10}\) seyyathā pi manussā ekacce ca devā ekacce ca vinīpātikā

\(^{11}\) Cf. L. Schmithaunen’s comments on this fourth category: “This Sutta not only makes black (bad), white (good) and mixed karma responsible for rebirth, but also establishes neither black nor white karma as a kind of counter-karma conducive to the destruction of ordinary, retributive karma,” in Ronald W. Neufeldt (ed.), *Karma and Rebirth: post classical developments*, Albany, State University of New York Press, 1986, p.205.

\(^{12}\) DN I 82, MN I 22, etc.

\(^{13}\) ... imeṣam kho ahaṁ bhikkhave samanamalāṇam samanadosānaṁ samanakasatānaṁ apāyīkānaṁ thānaṁ duggativedaniyaṁ appahānā na samanasiṁścīpatipadān patipanno ti vaddhi. MN I 281

\(^{14}\) Compare the commonly occurring phrase yathā-kammūpaṇe, “according to their actions”, which is used in conjunction with sugate and duggate,”happy and unhappy destinations” DN I 82, MN I 22, etc.
Vedana and kamma in the Devadūtasutta

In the Devadūtasutta of the Majjhimanikāya, the term vedana is once again found in an account of the ripening of kamma. In this sutta the fate after death of a person who has conducted himself badly in body, speech and mind is related. He is reborn in hell (niraya), and led before King Yama, the god of death, by the warders of hell (nirayapālā). They address Yama:

Sir, this man had no respect for mother and father, recluses and brāhmīns. He showed no deference to the elders of his clan. Let the king order his punishment.\(^{15}\)

Yama admonishes the man, and when the admonishing is over and Yama falls silent, there follows a long description of the various tortures that are inflicted upon him by the warders of hell.\(^{16}\) After the description of each torture, two phrases recur. The second of these relates to the doctrine of kamma expounded in the Nikāyas: “Yet he does not do his time (kālaṃ karoti) so long as that evil action has not exhausted its results”.\(^{17}\) The first phrase which follows the description of each torture introduces vedana into this process: “there he feels painful, racking, piercing vedana.”\(^{18}\) Thus once again we find the term vedana used in an important account of the ripening of kamma.

In the Māratajjaniyasutta, also of the Majjhimanikāya, we find a description of the fate of the evil Dūsi, who attacked one of the disciples of a previous Buddha by the name of Kakusandha. He is reborn in the Great Hell (mahāniraya). We are told that this goes by a number of names: one of these is related to the term vedana, Paccatta-vedaniya, variously translated as “the Separate Feelings,”\(^{19}\) and “the hell to be felt for oneself”\(^{20}\). In the verse section of this sutta, it is said of the hell in which Dūsi suffers

\(^{15}\) Ayam deva puriso ametteyyo apetteyyo asāmanīyo ... imassa devo dandam papeti ti. MN III 179 = AN I 138.
\(^{16}\) MN III 182-86
\(^{17}\) na ca tāva kālaṃ karoti yīva na taṃ pāpakammaṃ vyantīti: MN III 183-86 passim.
\(^{18}\) so taṁha dukkhaḥ tippa kātaḥ vedanaḥ vedeti MN III 183-86 passim.
that it has “one hundred stakes of steel, each with its own vedanā”. Düśī also suffers in another part of the Great Hell, and there he experiences vedanā called vutthānīma. The exact significance of this last term is unclear. What is clear from this passage, however, is that vedanā plays an important role in the fruition of Düśī’s evil deeds.

In the Cūladhammasamādānasutta of the Majjhimanikāya as well, painful vedanā is said to be experienced in hell (niraya) by religious men (samaṇa-brāhmaṇa) who indulge in sense pleasures. These “painful, racking, piercing vedanā” (dukkhā tippā kaṭukā vedanā) are used to illustrate the way of undertaking things (dhammasamādāna) which is pleasant now and ripens in the future as pain (paccuppannasukhā āyatīp dukkhavipākaṃ).

Kamma which is diṭṭhadhamma-vedaniya, samparāya-vedaniya, etc. AN IV 382

We find the term vedaniya used repeatedly in connection with kamma in a dialogue between Śāriputta and a bhikkhu in the Aṅguttaranikāya. The bhikkhu puts the following question to Śāriputta:

How is it, reverend Śāriputta? Does one live the godly life under the Fortunate One in the hope: “May an action [whose result] is to be experienced here and now (kammaṃ diṭṭhadhammavedaniyaṃ) become an action [whose result] is to be experienced by me in the next life (kammaṃ samparāyavedaniyaṃ)”?

Śāriputta replies in the negative to this question. The bhikkhu puts nine more questions which all include kamma which is “to be experienced” (vedaniya) in various ways, which are all replied to in the negative. The second is the opposite of the first: “may an action [whose result] is to be experienced in the next life (kammaṃ samparāyavedaniyaṃ) become an action [whose result] is to be experienced by me here and now (kammaṃ diṭṭhadhammavedaniyaṃ).” The third and fourth questions combine vedaniya with terms which are often found in conjunction with vedanā, pleasant (sukha)

21 satam āsi ayosakkā, sabbe paccattavedanā MN I 337
22 MN I 305
23 kin nu kho āvuso Śāriputta “yaṃ kammaṃ diṭṭhadhammavedaniyaṃ, taṃ me kammaṃ samparāyavedaniyaṃ hotu” ti etassa attāhya Bhagavati brahmacariyaṃ vussati ti? AN IV 382
and painful (dukkha); the third question has: “may an action [whose result] is to be experienced as pleasant (kammaṃ sukhavedaniyam) become an action [whose result] is to be experienced by me as painful (kammaṃ dukkhavedaniyam).” The fourth is the reverse of this. Thus we see in this sutta a significant combination of a discussion on the theme of the workings of kamma and the use of a term which is closely related to vedanā.

In the above passage the phrase “kamma which is to be experienced here and now” (kammaṃ dvīthadhammavedaniyam) is found. In a sutta in the Majjhimanikāya the idea of kamma being experienced “here and now” (dīthe va dhamme) is expressed with a verb formed from pati-sam-vid, rather than with the gerundive vedaniya.

You are experiencing (patisanvedesi) here and now the result of actions (kammassa vipākam) because of which you might have been tortured in hell for many years, for many hundred of years, for many thousand of years.24

The close connection between these terms is clear when passages like these are compared.

The term pati-sam-vid in descriptions of the working of kamma: the Devadūtasutta and the Makhādevasutta

Forms from pati-sam-vid are very often found in connection with the term vipāka, which literally means “fruit” and which is often translated as “result”, implying the result of one’s actions (kamma). This combination is so common that C.A.F. Rhys Davids, in her translation of a text studied below supplies the word “result” in square brackets where the text has only “he experiences” (so patisamvediyati).25 We see pati-sam-vid used in passages connected with expositions of the doctrine of kamma in the Devadūtasutta of the Majjhimanikāya, which as we saw above, also uses the term vedanā in this connection. Before the descriptions of the results of kamma which include the term

24 Yassa kho tvam kammassa vipākena bahūni vassāni bahūni vassassatiṃ bahūni vassasahassitiṃ niraye pacceyyasi, tassa tvam, brāhmaṇa, kammassa vipākaṃ dīthe va dhamme patisamvedesi. MN II 104
vedanā, there occurs a passage in which Yama the god of death admonishes the evil-doer. Several times he tells this man:

... this evil action of yours was not done by your mother or your father, or by your brother or your sister, or by your friends and companions, or by your kinsmen and relatives, or by recluses and brahmins, or by gods: this evil action was done by you yourself, and you yourself will experience (patisamvedissati) its result (vipākaṃ).

Thus we see a verb from pati-sam-vid playing an important role in a description of the process of kamma.

Forms from pati-sam-vid are not used only in connection with the experiencing of the results of evil deed. As a part of a narrative passage in the Makhādevasutta of the Majjhimanikāya, a certain charioteer by the name of Mātali, who is about to take his king to an assembly of gods in his divine chariot (dibba yāne), addresses the king in the following manner:

But, great king, by which route shall I drive you: by that on which doers of evil experience (patisamvedenti) the results of evil actions, or by that on which doers of good experience (patisamvedenti) the results of good actions?

The term patisamvedenti is used to express the experiencing of the results of actions (kammānaṃ vipākaṃ) both good and bad. The king replies to the charioteer “Drive me by both routes, Mātali” (ubhayena eva maṇḍ, Mātali, nehitī); and the commentary informs us that Mātali led the king first through the hell realm (niraya), and then he led him through the heavenly world (devaloka).

The terms pati-sam-vid and vedaniya in descriptions of the results of kamma experienced in the present existence.

26 Taṃ kho pana te etam pāpaṃ kammaṃ n’eva mātarā kataṃ na pitarā kataṃ na bhātārā kataṃ na bhaginīā kataṃ na mūtāmamaehi kataṃ na utsāsālohihi kataṃ na sāmaṇḍrābhīṣehi kataṃ na devatāhi kataṃ; tayā v’ etam pāpaṃ kammaṃ kataṃ. MN III 179-80
27 Api ca, mahāraja, kataṃna taṃ nemi. --yena vā pāpakāmā pāpakāmā kammānaṃ vipākaṃ patisamvedenti, yena vā kalyāṇakāmā kalyāṇāna kammānaṃ vipākaṃ patisamvedenti? MN II 80
Forms from \textit{pati-sam-vid} are not only found in connection with the experiencing of the fruits of kamma in subsequent lives; they are also used to describe the experiencing of these fruits in the present life. The following passage from a \textit{sutta} in the Aṅguttaranikāya is repeated for acts (kamma) born of aversion (\textit{dosa}) and for acts born of delusion (\textit{moha}):

An act performed in lust, born of lust, originating in lust, arising from lust, has its fruit wherever one’s personal self (\textit{attaabhāva}) is reborn. Wherever that act come to fruition, there one experiences (\textit{patisamvedeti}) the fruit thereof in the present existence or when born into future existences.\textsuperscript{28}

We looked above at a \textit{sutta} from the Aṅguttaranikāya (AN I 134) which has an example of the term \textit{patisamvedeti} used in conjunction with the phrase “the result of one’s kamma” (\textit{kammassa vipākaṁ}). This same \textit{sutta} concludes with a verse passage which includes the term \textit{vedaniya}\textsuperscript{29} in the description of kamma experienced in this life:

From lust or malice or delusion born,
An action, great or small, performed by fools
Just here (\textit{idh’ eva}) is felt (\textit{vedaniya}): no other ground is seen
[For its fulfilment].\textsuperscript{30}

Similar terms are used in a verse in the Theragāthā:

Whatever evil was done by me previously in other births,

\textsuperscript{28} \textit{Yam bhikkhave lobhapakataṁ kammapā lobhajāp lobhānidānap lobhasamudayaṁ yath’ assa attabhāvo nibbattaṁ tattha taṁ kammapā vipasociyantī, yath’ taṁ kammapā vipasociyantī tattha tassa kammassa vipākāṁ patisamvedeti diṭṭh’ eva dhāmate uppaţje vā apare va parīyāye. AN I 134}

\textsuperscript{29} For the last phrase in this passage I have followed O. von Hinüber’s translation of his “restored” text: “The original text thus restored [ie change of vā to va] translates as; “in the present existence or when born into future existences””. O. von Hinüber, \textit{Selected Papers on Pali Studies}, Oxford, Pali Text Society, 1994, p.48.

\textsuperscript{30} The text here has \textit{vedaniya}. Both forms are found, without, apparently, any difference in meaning.

\textit{Lobhajāp dosaṇā c’eva mohajaṭ cāpi ‘viddasa}

\textit{Yam tesa pakataṁ kammaṁ appaṁ vā yadi vā bahum}

\textit{Idh’ eva taṁ vedaniyaṁ vaṭṭhūṁ aṭṭhaṁ na viṭṭata...} AN I 136
that must now be experienced (idd'eva tam vedaniyam). No other basic cause exists.\textsuperscript{31}

A prose passage in the Aṅguttaranikāya uses these terms in a significant discussion of aspects of the process of kamma:

He comes to know thus: Whatever evil deed has been done by me here with this body born of action, all of that must be felt here (sabbha tam idha vedaniyam); then it will not follow me and come to be hereafter.\textsuperscript{32}

The term \textit{pati-sam-vid} and the Aṅgulimālasutta

The Aṅgulimālasutta of the Majjhimanikāya has a particularly interesting example of the use of the term \textit{pati-sam-vid} in connection with kamma. The following passage purports to describe an incident which occurred after the notorious murderer Aṅgulimāla had met the Buddha, ceased his life of crime, become a bhikkhu, and attained arahantship:

Then, when it was morning, the venerable Aṅgulimāla dressed, and taking his bowl and outer robe, went into Śāvatthī for alms. Now on that occasion someone threw a clod and hit the venerable Aṅgulimāla’s body, someone else threw a stick and hit his body, and someone else threw a potsherf and hit his body. Then, with blood running from his cut head, with his bowl broken, and with his outer robe torn, the venerable Aṅgulimāla went to the Blessed One. The Blessed One saw him coming in the distance and told him: “Bear it, brahmin! Bear it, brahmin! You are experiencing (\textit{patisamvedesi}) here and now the result of actions because of which you might have been tortured in hell for many years, for many hundred of years, for many thousand of years.\textsuperscript{33}

\textsuperscript{31} \textit{Yam mayā pakataṁ pāpaṁ pubbe aṭṭhāsu jātisu, iddh'eva tam vedaniyam, vattu aṭṭhān na vijjati.} Thag.81

\textsuperscript{32} \textit{So evaṁ pājāsaṁ: Yam kho me idha kīkṣi pubbe imāna karajakāyaṁ pāpakammanaṁ kathā, sabbha tam idha vedaniyam, na tam anusam bhavissati.} AN V.300

\textsuperscript{33} \textit{Tena kho panā samayena aṭṭhena pi ledhasa bhūto ayasmato Aṅgulimālasa kāye nipatati ... Adhibājñi tvaṁ, brahmaṇa; adhibājñi tvaṁ, brahmaṇa. Yassa kho tvaṁ kammassa vipākena bahūni vassāni bahūni vassaṣṭāni bahūni vassasassāsiṁ nibbāye pacceyyasā, tassa tvaṁ, brahmaṇa, kammassa vipākam diṭṭhe va dhamme paṭisamvedesit.} MN II 104
Besides noticing the use of the “experiencing” or “feeling” (paṭi-sam-vid) of the results of actions, it is also worth noting that the Buddha tells Aṅgulimāla to “bear (iō” (adhivāseti). As we have seen in the first chapter of this thesis, there are quite a number of passages in the Nikāyas in which we find the term adhivāseti (“to bear” or “to endure”), and other terms related to it, in connection with vedanā, and especially in connection with unpleasant physical vedanā. Here the word vedanā is not used, but clearly Aṅgulimāla has undergone an experience which is unpleasant both physically and mentally.

The phrase vado vedeyyo MN I 258

The use of forms derived from paṭi-sam-vid in the context of discussion of the nature of kamma, and the combination of this usage with terms related to vedanā is found in a significant phrase which occurs in two of the suttas of the Majjhimanikāya. This phrase represents a view which is condemned by the Buddha. In the Mahāṭaṇhāsānakhayasutta it is said to be spoken by the bhikkhu Sāti who uses it to qualify the consciousness (viññāna) which, according to him, “runs and wanders through the round of rebirth” (sahāvattu samyutu):

Venerable sir, it is that which speaks (vado) and feels (vedeyyo) and experiences (paṭissamvedeti) here and there the result of good and bad actions.34

When this phrase occurs in the Sabbāsava-sutta it qualifies the self (attā) in the last of a series of views on the self which are condemned by the Buddha; in this view the self is considered to be “permanent, everlasting, eternal, not subject to change” and it is claimed that this self “will endure as long as eternity.”35

In the phrase which is common to both suttas, we again find paṭissamvedeti used in conjunction with the results of kamma. The subject of this phrase is consciousness or the self, and one of the points of interest in the phrase is the two unusual terms used to qualify the subject: consciousness or the self is said here to be vado vedeyyo. Both of

34 Vājaṃ bhante vado vedeyyo tatra tatra kalāṇapāpakānaṃ kammānaṃ vipākaṃ paṭissamvedeti. MN I 258
35 nicco dhuvo sussato avipariṇāṇadhunmo sassatisamaṃ tath’ eva ṭhassati/ MN I 18
these terms are used very rarely in the Nikāyas; indeed these appear to be the only occurrences of them apart from the use of vada in compounds. The commentaries on both of these passages gloss these two terms respectively as vadati ("it speaks") and vedayati ("it feels"). It is the second term which concerns us here: it is clearly related to the verbal root vid, and to the noun vedanā.36 This consciousness or self which "feels" (vedeyyo) also "experiences" (pati-sam-vid) the results of kamma. A close connection is thus established between the terms vedeyyo and pati-sam-vid, and the doctrine of kamma.

Sā vedanā so vediyatītī ... SN II 23

Along with the term vedanā, verbal forms derived from pati-sam-vid are also used in conjunction with the concept of kamma at numerous places in the Nikāyas. The parallelism between the usage of these two terms in this context can be seen in two suttas of the Nidānasamyutta of the Sthavuttanikāya. In one of these, the Buddha is represented as saying that the following two phrases do not represent his views:

Sā vedanā so vediyatītī ... Aañā vedanā, aañā vediyatītī.37

The meaning of these phrases is not immediately apparent. They can, however, be compared with two phrases which occur in a similar context in the sutta which immediately precedes this one. Again, the Buddha is represented as saying that he does not hold these views:

So karoti so patisamyvediyatītī ... Añño karoti añño patisamyvediyatītī ...38

C.A.F. Rhys Davids, in her 1922 translation of this passage gives:

"One and the same person both acts and experiences [the result]... "One acts, another experiences [the result]."39

36 The PED does not notice this word.
37 SN II 23
38 SN II 20
She has clearly modelled her translation of the first quoted passage on this one:

The experience (vedanā) and he who experiences [hereafter] (vediyati) are one and the same. ... The experience and he who experiences [hereafter] are different one from the other. 40

The noteworthy aspect of these two passages is the striking parallelism between the use of the term vedanā and vediyati in one, and the use of the terms karoti and patisaṃvediyati in the other. All of these terms are here used in a discussion of an aspect of the doctrine of kamma.

Loṇaphalasutta, AN I 249 ff.

The term vedaniya is also used to express the experiencing of kamma "in this life" in an important sutta on kamma from the Anguttaranikāya, the Loṇaphalasutta:

Now, for instance, there may be some trifling evil action of some person or other which may take him to hell. Or again there may be a like trifling evil action of some person or other which is to be experienced (vedaniya) in this very life ... 41

This follows on from an especially interesting use of the term vedaniya. This same sutta opens with two statements, the first of which "does not allow an opportunity for the utter destruction of suffering"; the second does allow this to happen:

1) Just as this man does a deed, so does he experience (patisaṃvediyati) it.
2) Just as this man does a deed that is to be experienced (vedaniyaṃ) so does he experience (patisaṃvediyati) its fulfilment (vipākajī). 42

40 Ibi., vol.ii, p.18.
41 Idha bhikkhave ekaccassā puggalassa appanattakam pi pāpan kammanā kataṃ tamaṃ evaṃ nirayaṃ upanaeti. Idha pana bhikkhave ekaccassā puggalassa tādissam yeva appanattakam pāpan kammanā kataṃ arthadhamme c' eva vedaniyaṃ hoti ... AN I 249
42 ... yathā yathāyaṃ puriso kammanā karoti tathā tathā tam patisaṃvediyati ti ... yathā yathā vedaniyaṃ ayaṃ puriso kammanā karoti tathā tathāssu vipākaṃ patisaṃvediyati ti. AN I 249.
Vedaniya is one of the key terms of the second statement. In the first, the man’s action (kamma) is not an action which is “to be experienced” (vedaniya), as it is in the second. The other difference between the two statements is that in the first the man experiences the action itself, whereas in the second it is specified that he experiences the result (vipāka) of the action.\(^{43}\)

An important distinction is being draw here between an action that is “to be experienced” or “to be felt” (vedaniya), and an action that is simply an action. La Vallée Poussin, as long ago as 1913, made the following perceptive observations on these concepts:

> The action of the body, of the voice or of thinking ... killing, stealing, etc., is not really an act (karman) in the Buddhist sense of the word, i.e., is not vedaniya, capable of being “felt”, pregnant with retribution, unless it is “perfect” or “finished” (abhisānkhaṭa = abhisamāskṛta), i.e., thought, reflected upon, or wished (abhisāncetayita).\(^{44}\)

For La Vallée Poussin, then, the term vedaniya plays an important role in its connection with kamma; it signifies that the “act” (kamma) which it qualifies is not just “to be experienced”, but is “pregnant (grosse) with retribution”. For this to be the case, the act must also be abhisānkhaṭa, “constructed” or “formed.”

Old kamma and the terms vedaniya and vedanā

La Vallée Poussin’s observations come as part of a discussion of two similar passages from the Nikāyas. He gives a translation which conflates the two passages:

\(^{43}\) This distinction is explored further in certain Abhidhamma texts. W. Halbfass notes that “Kathavatthu 7.10 establishes a sharp distinction between kamma and kammavipāka.” W.D. O’Flaherty, ed., *Karma and Rebirth in Classical Indian Traditions*, Berkely, University of California Press, 1980, p.296, note 95.

\(^{44}\) Louis de La Vallée Poussin, *Bouddhisme*, *Études et matériaux, Théorie des douze causes*, Ghent, Université de Gand, 1913, p.9: “... l’action du corps, de la voix ou de la pensée, ... tuer, voler, etc., n’est vraiment un acte (karman) au sens bouddhique du mot, c’est-à-dire n’est vedaniya, capable d’être “sentie”, grosse de retribution, que si elle est “parfaite” ou “achevée” (abhisānkhaṭa = abhisamāskṛta), c’est-à-dire pensée, réfléchie, ou voulue (abhisāncetayita).”
The body, the eye, the tongue ... should be considered as being the old act, the act which is completed, reflected on, a cause of sensation ... 45

The first passage is from the Nidānasamyutta of the Saṃyuttanikāya:

The body, bhikkhus, is not your own, neither is it that of any others. It is to be viewed as action that is old, brought about and intentionally done, as a base for feeling (vedaniya). 46

The second is from the Salāyatanasamyutta of the same nikāya.

The eye, bhikkhus, is to be viewed as action that is old, brought about and intentionally done, as a base for feeling (vedaniya). 47

This is then repeated for the other five sense doors, which includes the mind (mano) in the schema of the Nikāyas. In his translation, La Vallée Poussin renders vedaniya as “cause for sensation” (“cause de sensation”). Woodward in his 1927 translation gives “a base for feeling,” which I have followed in the above translations. Woodward indicates that he is following the commentary which on the Salāyatanasamyutta passages gives vedanāya vatthi, a “ground (or reason) for vedanā”, for vedaniya. 48

The term vedaniya is thus seen playing an important role in these significant passages on kamma. The theme of “old kamma” (purāṇa-kamma) occurs also in the Udāra in relation to the topic of this thesis. We find there a short sutta which labels certain types of painful vedanā as being “born from the result of old kamma”.

45 Ibid, p.11: Le corps, l’œil, la langue ... il faut le considérer comme étant l’acte ancien, l’acte parfait, réfléchi, cause de sensation.
46 Nāyam bhikkhave kāyo tumhākam na pi aācasuṃ. Purāṇaṃ idam bhikkhave kammāṃ abhisaṅkhataṃ abhisācetayitaṃ vedaniyaṃ dāṭhabbam. SN II 65.
47 Cakkhum bhikkhave purāṇakammāṃ abhisaṅkhataṃ abhisācetayitaṃ vedaniyaṃ dāṭhabbam. SN IV 132
48 Spk II 402
Mindful and fully understanding, he bears without wavering *vedanā* which is born from the result of old kamma, painful, racking, sharp, piercing.\(^{49}\)

The Mahākammavibhaṅgasutta

The term *vedaniya* also plays a significant role in another important statement on kamma, the Mahākammavibhaṅgasutta, the Great Discourse on the Analysis of Kamma, of the Majjhimanikāya. A certain wanderer by the name of Potaliputta is shown as asking a bhikkhu the following question:

Friend Samiddhi, having done an intentional action by way of body, speech, or mind, what does one feel (*vediyati*)?\(^{50}\)

The bhikkhu gives an unsatisfactory answer, and later the Buddha is asked for the proper way to answer this question. He replies in the following manner:

> Having done an intentional (*saṅcetanikānta*) action by way of body, speech, or mind [whose result is] to be felt as pleasant (*sukhavedaniyam*), one feels pleasure (*sukham so vediyati*). Having done an intentional action by way of body, speech, or mind [whose result is] to be felt as painful, one feels pain. Having done an intentional action by way of body, speech, or mind [whose result is] to be felt as neither-pain-nor-pleasure, one feels neither-pain-nor-pleasure.\(^{51}\)

This discussion of kamma has a number of points in common with the Samyuttanikāya passages which we have just been examining. Potaliputta asks about kamma which is “intentional” (*saṅcetanika*). The “old kamma” (*purāṇam kammapi*) which is the body at SN II 65 and the six sense doors at SN IV 132, is “intentionally done” (*abhisaṅcetayita*; PED “raised into consciousness, thought out, intended, planned”). The connection

---

\(^{49}\) *purāṇakammavipākaṃ dukkhaṃ tippāṃ khatvaṃ katukaṃ vedanaṃ adhivāseṇto sato sampajātā avihāyamānaṃ.* Ud. 21

\(^{50}\) *Saṅcetanikāṃ, āvuso Samiddhi, kammat kāvya vācaka manasā, kim so vediyati.* MN III 207

\(^{51}\) *Saṅcetanikāṃ, āvuso Potaliputta, kammat kāvya vācaka manasā sukhavedaniyam, sukhampi so vediyati. Saṅcetanikāṃ, āvuso Potaliputta, kammat kāvya vācaka manasā dukkhaṃ sukhavedaniyam, dukkhaṃ so vediyati. Saṅcetanikāṃ, āvuso Potaliputta, kammat kāvya vācaka manasā adukkhamasukhavedaniyam, adukkhamaṃ sukhavedaniyam, adukkhamasukhamedaniyam, adukkhamaṃ sukhavedaniyam, adukkhamasukhavedaniyam, adukkhamaṃ sukhavedaniyam, adukkhamasukhavedaniyam.* MN III 209
between these terms and the term *vedaniya* is brought out by La Vallée Poussin in his paraphrase of the Samyuttanikāya passages, which is worth repeating here: “[t]he action of the body, of the voice or of thinking ..., is not really an act ... i.e., is not *vedaniya*, capable of being “felt”, pregnant with retribution, unless it is “perfect” or “finished” (*abhisaṅkhata = abhisamskṛta*), i.e., thought, reflected upon, or wished (*abhisaṃcetayita*).\(^{52}\)

The term *vedaniya* is used in a somewhat different way in this Majjhimanikāya passage than it is in the Samyuttanikāya passages: here it is qualified as either pleasant (*sukha*), painful (*dukkha*), or neither pleasant nor painful (*adukkhamasukha*). This corresponds to one of the standard classifications of *vedana* which is commonly found in the Nikāyas. In fact, prior to the Buddha’s statement quoted above, the Buddha tells the bhikkhus that Potaliputta had been asking about the three *vedanās*.\(^{53}\)

Curiously, though, when the term *vedaniya* is used again, later in the *sutta*, it is used in conjunction with *sukha* and *dukkha* only. These words occur in the final section, which is, according to the commentary, “the expounding of the knowledge of the great exposition of action”: the earlier part of the *sutta* is the “setting up of the outline for the purpose of presenting that exposition.” In this final section the following passage occurs:

Therein, Ānanda, as to the person who kills living beings, takes what is not given, misconducts himself in sensual pleasures, speaks falsehood, speaks maliciously, speaks harshly, gossips, is covetous, has a mind of ill will, and holds wrong view, and on the dissolution of the body, after death, reappears in a state of deprivation, in an unhappy destination, in perdition, even in hell: either earlier he did an evil action to be felt as painful (*dukkhavedaniya*), or later he did an evil action to be felt as painful, or at the time of death he acquired and undertook wrong view.\(^{54}\)

\(^{52}\) LVP, 1913, p.11.

\(^{53}\) adito va, Ānanda, Potaliputtaṃ paribhajakena tisso vedanā pucchitā. MN III 208

\(^{54}\) Tat', Ānanda, yāyaṁ puggalo idha pāriñcāyī hoti adinnādāyī hoti kānesu micchācāri hoti musāvādī hoti pisunāvāco hoti phussavāco hoti sampaddappalāpī hoti abhisamudāyī hoti vyāpāravāpyāti hoti micchādīṭṭhi hoti, ... kāyasā bhedā param maraṇaṇa apāyaṇa duggatīṇa vinipātaṇa nirayaṇa uppajjati, pubbe va 'ssa tam kātan hoti pāpakānnaṇaṃ dukkhavedaniyaṃ, paccāva 'ssa tam kātan hoti pāpakānnaṃ dukkhavedaniyaṃ, maraṇakāle va 'ssa hoti micchādīṭṭhi samattā samādiṇṇā. MN III 214
Here again the term *vedaniya* plays a key role in a passage which explains the working of kamma. An evil deed (*pāpakamma*) is "to be felt as painful" (*dukkhavedaniya*). Later on, a good deed (*kalyāṇakamma*) is said to be "felt as pleasant" (*sukhavedaniya*). Other factors, however, come into play in the rebirth process, and even one who has done good deeds may, if he takes hold of wrong views at the time of death, be reborn in a lower realm. It is stated, however, that this person does experience the result of his deeds (*vipākam paṭisampvedeti*) "in the present existence or when born into future existences."\(^{55}\)

Another word related to *vedanā* (*paṭisampvedeti*) is used here to express the "experiencing" of the results on kamma.

\[kammānāṃ ... appaṭisampviditvā ... \text{AN V 292.}\]

We have noticed that in the last three suttas that we have examined, kamma is described as *vedaniya* (or *sukhavedaniya*, etc.) and as intentional (*saṅcetanika*) or willed (*abhisāṅcetayita*). There is a series of three suttas in the Aṅguttaranīkāya (AN V 292-301) in which kamma which is intentional (*saṅcetanika*) is used in conjunction with a verbal form from *paṭi-saṃ-vidt*:

\[I, \text{ declare, bhikkhus, that of intentional (*saṅcetanika*) deeds done and accumulated there can be no wiping out without experiencing (*appaṭisampviditvā*) the result thereof, and that too whenever arising, either in this same visible state or in some state hereafter. I declare, bhikkhus, that there is no ending of suffering as regards intentional deeds done and accumulated without experiencing (*appaṭisampviditvā*) the results thereof.}\(^{56}\)

This passage is repeated five times in the course of the three suttas.

---

\(^{55}\) *ditte va dhamne ... appajjām va aparā va pariyāye. MN III 214*

\(^{56}\) *Nāhaṃ bhikkhave saṅcetanikāṇāṃ kammānāṃ katānaṃ upacitānaṃ appaṭisampviditvā vyantihāvam vaddāni, taḥ ca kho dīgha eva dhamme upajjajām va aparā va pariyāye. Na tvevāhaṃ bhikkhave saṅcetanikāṇāṃ kammānāṃ katānaṃ upacitānaṃ appaṭisampviditvā dukkhas' antakiriyaṃ vaddāni. AN V 292, 294, 297, 298, 299.*
Conclusion

There is a great deal of complexity surrounding many of the passages on kamma in the Nikaayas. Many aspects of this question have not been touched on in this chapter. One thing I hope, though, has been made clear, and that is the fact that in many descriptions of the workings of kamma the term vedanā and terms related to it play a very significant role.
Chapter Five: Conclusion.

In chapter three of this thesis I made a brief study of an oft-quoted line from the Nikāyas:

Bhikkhus, even if bandits were to sever you savagely limb by limb with a two-handled saw, he who gave rise to a mind of hate towards them would not be carrying out my teaching.¹

I pointed out there that this is the classic statement of the case of one who experiences physical pain but is not affected by it at the mental level, and I tried to establish a connection between this statement and what we can glean of the Buddha’s teachings on vedanā as represented in the Nikāyas. Everyone who reads this statement must surely be struck by the extraordinary demands that it is making on a practitioner of the Buddha’s teaching: what kind of person would be able to remain balanced enough in a situation like this not to react with some negative emotion? If S.N. Goenka is correct in his understanding of the role of the objective observation of all kinds of physical sensations in the practice of the Buddha’s teaching, perhaps it is one who is an expert in such observation.

In all of the vast writings on Buddhist thought and literature, there has not been, as far as I am aware, a study of the use of the term vedanā in the Pali Nikāyas. The purpose of this thesis has been, therefore, to explore the use of this term vedanā in the Pali texts. This was done by focussing on a number of themes in connection with vedanā.

The first chapter focussed on passages in which vedanā features in descriptions of practices which lead to liberation from suffering. The passages studied in this chapter clearly give great emphasis to vedanā in their descriptions of soteriological processes. As far as I am aware, none of these passages have been grouped together and examined by those who have written on these texts. This survey shows that Goenka’s emphasis on vedanā in his meditation teachings has a firm basis in the texts of the Nikāyas.

¹ Ubbatodaṇḍakena ce pi bhikkhave kakacena corā ocarakā añgamaṅgāni okanteyyam, tatāpi yo mano padūseyya na me so tena sāsanakaro. MN I 129
When drawing conclusions from any study of passages in the Nikâyas, however, it is important to bear in mind the disparate nature of these texts. R. Gethin's comments, quoted in the introduction to this thesis, are worth repeating here:

We are faced not so much with a single finished canvas as with a bewildering array of sketches and detailed studies which it is impossible to take in at once. Their subject is seen from different angles and in various aspects; it is viewed from near and afar.²

There are of course many suttas in the Nikâyas which make no mention of the term vedanâ. This is not to say, however, that these suttas contradict the hypothesis that the correct understanding of vedanâ is an important element in the path to liberation.

The second chapter was an extension of the first, studying the use of the term vedanâ in passages dealing with the causal sequence which has profound soteriological significance, the paticca-samuppâda ("dependent origination"), and in other passages dealing with related causal sequences. This detailed study of the role of vedanâ in causal sequences found in the Nikâyas showed that there are indeed passages in which this term is given marked emphasis, and that the striking statements quoted at the beginning of the second chapter from the writings of three Buddhist scholars, Kalupahana, Nyanaponika and Bhikkhu Bodhi, do have a basis in the texts, especially when taken in conjunction with the passages explored in the first chapter of this thesis. In causal sequences of different kinds we find vedanâ being given an important role. As far as I know, this thesis is the first study to explore this question in any detail.

The third chapter looked at passages in the Nikâyas which deal with mental and physical aspects of vedanâ. Goenka places great emphasis on the role that bodily sensations play in the meditation technique that he teaches:

Vipassanâ means a special kind of vision: observation of the reality within oneself. This is achieved by taking as the object of attention one's own physical sensations. The technique is the systematic and dispassionate observation of

sensations within oneself. This observation unfolds the entire reality of mind and body.³

This chapter examined texts from the Nikāyas which put vedanā in physical and mental contexts. It also placed this issue in the broader context of descriptions of physical and mental aspects of other phenomena in the Nikāyas. This survey of descriptions of the mental and physical aspects of vedanā in the Nikāyas showed that the widely held assumption that vedanā is a purely mental phenomenon is not borne out by a close study of the texts. Furthermore, the interest that the texts show in describing both mental and physical aspects of vedanā reflects a general interest in the Nikāyas in mental and physical aspects of various phenomena. Given the important role that vedanā plays in certain descriptions of soteriological practices and of causal sequences, as seen in the first two chapters of this thesis, the attempt made in this chapter to further our understanding of the nature of vedanā assumes considerable significance.

An important aspect of the third chapter is a detailed investigation of the conflicting views found in the Pali commentaries on many passages relating to the mind-body theme. The interest that we find in the Nikāyas in pointing out the physical and mental aspects of vedanā echoes a broader theme: in a large number of places we find descriptions of mental and physical aspects of various phenomena. This theme seems to have presented some difficulties to the early commentators on these texts, for we find a certain amount of inconsistency in their treatment of it. For example, the following passage appears in several places in each of the four principal Nikāyas:

When he is glad, joy is born in him; in one who is joyous, the body becomes tranquil; one whose body is tranquil feels pleasure; in one who feels pleasure, the mind becomes concentrated.⁴

It is a remarkable description of a process in which mental and physical events both play important roles and interact with each other in important ways. Moreover, a term related

---

⁴ *pamuditissa piti jāyati, pitimanassa kāyo passambhati, passaddhakāyo sukhām vedeti, sukhino cittam samākhīyati*. DN I 73, DN III 241, 288; MN I 37, 283; SN IV 78-79, 351-58; SN V 156, 598; AN I 243-4; AN III 21-23, 285-87; AN V 329-34
to *vedanā* plays a role in this process: the phrase *sukham vedeti* ("he feels pleasure") uses a verb which is cognate with the noun *vedanā*. We can interpret the phrase *sukham vedeti* ("he feels pleasure") as a link between the body (*kāya*) of the preceding phrase ("the body becomes tranquil," *kāyo passambhati*) and the mind (*citta*) of the phrase which follows ("in one who feels pleasure, the mind becomes concentrated," *sukhino cittaṃ samādhīyatī*).

The commentaries, however, have different views on the meaning of this passage. The commentaries on the Dighanikāya, for example, take *kāya* in this passage to mean the mind. They understand the term *kāya* as a way of saying *nāmakāya*, that is, in the terms of the commentaries, the four immaterial aggregates. Other commentaries, however, are less unequivocal. The commentary on this passage as it appears in the Majjhimanikāya simply glosses *kāya* as *kāya*. This gives us little further information on how this commentary wants us to understand the term. It is possible that we are being asked to take *kāya* at face value, as meaning simply the physical body. On its first appearance in the Aṅguttaranikāya, the commentary on that text has another interpretation of this passage: ""the body becomes tranquil" [means] the group of the mind (*nāmakāya*) and the group of matter (*rūpakāya*) are without agitation". Interestingly, here the commentary seems to be taking *kāya* as meaning mind and body together, using its customary terminology of *nāmakāya* for the four immaterial aggregates and *rūpakāya* for the aggregate of matter, that is, the body.

The commentaries are divided in their interpretation of the nature of pleasure in this context. The Dighanikāya commentary and the Aṅguttaranikāya commentary say that it is both bodily and mental. The Majjhimanikāya commentary, on the other hand, specifies that "pleasure" in this passage is "mental pleasure". It is curious to note that it is the Majjhimanikāya commentary, which does not define *kāya* in this passage as *nāmakāya* (mental group), which nevertheless represents "pleasure" only in mental

---

5 Sv I 217 on DN I 73 *nāmakāyo passambhati* and Sv III 1032 on DN III 241 *kāyoti nāmakāyo patipassambhati*.
6 kāyo passambhatti kāyo passaddho hoti vāpasatadaratho Ps I 174 on MN I 37
7 kāyo passambhatti nāmakāyopi rūpakāyopi vigatadaratho hoti Mp II 357 on AN I 243
8 Sv I 217 on DN I 73: *sukham vedeti kāyikampi cetasikampi sukham vedeti*. Mp II 357 on AN I 243: *sukham vedeyati kāyikacetasakasukham vedeyati*
9 Ps I 174 on MN I 37: *passaddhakāyo sukhanti evaṃ vāpasatākāyadaratho cetasikāṃ sukhām patīsāṃvedeti*
terms. And it is the Dīghanikāya commentary, which sees kāya as being a mental phenomenon (nīmakāya), which explains “pleasure” as being both bodily and mental (kāyikampī cetasikampī). This seems to be further evidence of confusion in the minds of the commentators on these questions. This confusion seems to stem from a reluctance to take the term kāya in this context at face value. The study in chapter three of the tension within the commentarial tradition of this important aspect of the interpretation of these key passages has not, as far as I am aware, been carried out prior this thesis. It may well constitute the most important contribution that this thesis makes to the furthering of our understanding of why it is that comparatively little attention has been paid to the study of the importance of the term vedanā in the Pali texts. At an early stage in the tradition, there seems to have arisen some confusion on these matters.

The fourth chapter surveyed passages in the Nikāyas which highlight vedanā in their descriptions of the workings of kamma (Skt. karma). There is a great deal of complexity surrounding many of the passages on kamma in the Nikāyas. Many aspects of this question have not been touched on in this chapter. The passages surveyed in this chapter do, however, show that in many descriptions of the workings of kamma the term vedanā and terms related to it play a very significant role.
Bibliography

Translations of Primary Sources


Secondary Sources


McDermott, James Paul, *Development in the Early Buddhist Concept of Kamma / Karma*, New Delhi, Munshiram Manoharlal, 1984


